

PARENTS' GUIDE
CONNECT

5th

PRIMARY FIVE
SECOND TERM

2024



الصف الخامس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

هبة مجدية
غير مخصصة للبيع

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

Part 1

- Punctuation
- How to write a paragraph / a biography
- How to answer the comprehension questions
- Specification for Fifth Year Primary
(Second Term) 2023 / 2024
- How to answer the question number 6 in the exam

Theme 3: My society

Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

Unit 8 At the doctor's

Unit 9 My favorite animal

Review 3

Theme 4: Being responsible

Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

Unit 11 Vacations

Unit 12 Fiction reader: A Fantastic Family
Adventure

Review 4

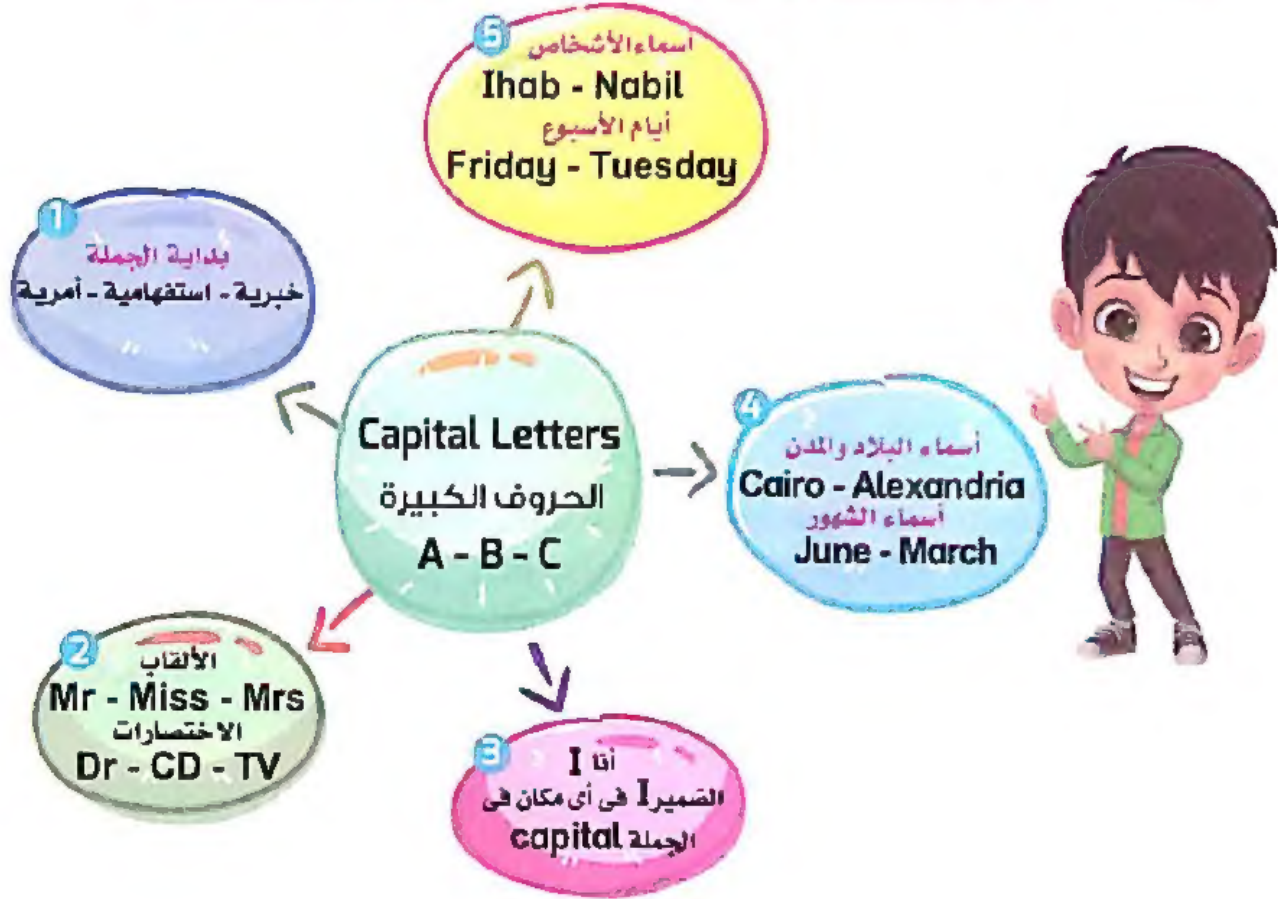
Part 2

- General Tests
- Listening materials



Punctuation

علامات الترقيم



Examples:

1. **I** like my family and friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. **Take** the medicine. (جملة أمرية)
3. **What's** your favorite color? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** have a headache. (الضمير)
5. I went to **Aswan** last **July**. (أسماء المدن والشهور)
6. **Mr** Nader goes to the club on **Monday**. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

1 بعد كلمة
Yes, / No,

The comma
(,) الفاصلة

3 قبل اسم المخاطب إذا جاء في آخر الجملة وبعد اسم المخاطب إذا جاء في أول الجملة

2 للفصل بين مجموعة من الكلمات في قائمة إذا لم يكن بينهما and

4 قبل كلمة please إذا جاءت في آخر الجملة وبعدها إذا جاءت في أول الجملة

Examples:

- 1- Yes, I am. / No, I am not. (Yes, / No, بعد)
- 2- I have a pen, a pencil and a book in my bag. (الفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- 3- Study hard, Omar. / Omar, study hard. (اسم مخاطب)
- 4- Help me, please. / Please, help me. (Please كلمة)

1 Question mark
علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال

The end of the sentence
نهاية الجملة

3 Exclamation mark
علامة التعجب (!) في حالة الترحيب أو التعجب

2 Full stop
النقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية

Examples:

1. I visited the Red Sea. (جملة خبرية)
2. Write your homework. (جملة أمرية)
3. How old are you? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hi! Hoda. (علامة تعجب)



How to write a paragraph? كيف تكتب مقرة الشاتية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة ثلاثون (٣٠) كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطى للتلاميذ عنصرين مساعدين قد يكونوا عبارتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولاً ترتيب الجملة

فاعل			فعل	تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال
Ahmed	School	Car	is going / go / goes	home / yesterday happy / well
			was doing / did	

ثانياً صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

She is fine.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

Samy is a vet.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

He went to the park.

زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We are open on Friday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

I help her.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

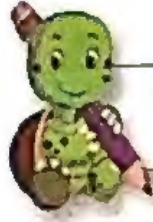
أكتب مقرة إشارية من ٣٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

My new house

Guiding words

moved to - bigger

My father had a new job, so we moved to a new house. It's close to his work. The new house is bigger than our old house. I like living here.



How to write a biography?

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (Biography)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة ثلاثون ٢٠ كلمة عن سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية مشهورة قد تكون رياضية أو علمية أو سياسية بالاستعانة بالعنصرين المساعدين:

Write a text of **THIRTY (30)** words using the following guiding elements:

تكتب مقرة إثنائية من ٢٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

Mohamed Salah

Guiding questions

- 1- Where was he born?
- 2- Why is he a famous player?

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player around the world. He was born in Gharbia governorate in 1992. He scores many goals in his team. I like him very much.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.

- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.

- الجمل الأخرى في النص تُعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد

يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى

- The underlined word '.....' refers to

ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

2- حدد أهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك ويمكن استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.

3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية

4- اكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

التمرين الثاني

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

تليها الخطوات السابقة:

1- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسي بالساحين **tourists**

2- اهم ما يخصصهم هو زيارة مصر والاماكن السياحية بها والافعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **come to see**

3- استبعد المعلومات الأقل اهمية من كل جملة.

4- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

1- اهم شخص **My father**

2- واهم شيء يخصه انه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني ان اتفوق في دراستي.

3- استبعد المعلومات الأقل اهمية من كل جملة.

4- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الاختبار الصف الخامس الابتدائي 2022-2023

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **FIFTY (50)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark and a half each)

B- Reading (14 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given.

The first sentence should be written in full. (One mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)



B: TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO (2) of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with SIX (6) words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences.

(One mark each)

6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

(One mark each)

7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)

ONE (1) simple statement (sentence OR question) of about SIX (6) words with TWO (2) missing punctuation marks each is provided (Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(Half a mark each)

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than THIRTY (30) words related to a specific topic using TWO (2) given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in ONE (1) of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph
- Biography

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)

طريقة شرح السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

⑥ Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets:

- اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس.
- يطلب من الطالب تصحيح الكلمة من بين القوسين حسب القواعد اللغوية التى درسها.
- يعطى للطالب جملتين للتدريب على القواعد اللغوية التى درسها ويكتب الطالب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة من بين القوسين.

⑥ Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets:

1. He is (is) very frightened yesterday.

He **was** very frightened yesterday.

2. She didn't (went) to the park.

She didn't **go** to the park.

3. The baby is crying. He is (happy).

The baby is crying. He is **unhappy**.

4. Can you (reading) a story?

Can you **read** a story?

5. How do you (feeling)?

How do you **feel**?

6. I like (play) sports.

I like **playing** sports.

7. What do you do (in) Saturdays?

What do you do **on** Saturdays?

8. Last week, my parents (buys) a new apartment.

Last week, my parents **bought** a new apartment.



My
society

Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة

2. Talk about the home and furniture.

- يتحدث الطالب عن المنزل والأثاث.

3. Read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.

- يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمع إلى حوار قصير حول منازل مختلفة.

4. Understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.

- يفهم الطالب ويستخدم الماضي البسيط لتحدث عن الأحداث الماضية.

5. Learn how to say double vowels.

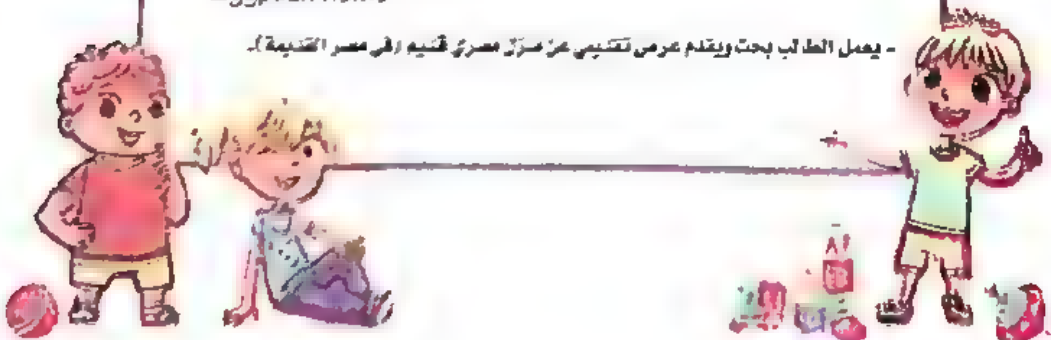
- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق الحروف المتحركة المتضاعفة.

6. Write a simple blog about an unusual home.

- يكتب الطالب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غريب.

7. Research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home

- يعمل الطالب بحث ويقدم عرض تقديمي عن منزل مصري قديم في مصر القديمة.



LESSON

1

The Home



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



armchair

كرسي ذو مسندتين



bed

سرير



cushion

وسادة



closet

دولاب / خزانة



elevator مصعد

At home

في المنزل



oven فرن



shower دش



television تليفزيون

Rooms in an apartment

الغرف في الشقة

living room

حجرة المعيشة

kitchen

مطبخ

balcony

بلكونة / شرفة

bedroom

حجرة النوم

bathroom

حمام

Adjectives

صفات

old

قديم

new

جديد

modern

حديث

bigger

أكبر

closer

أقرب

fantastic

رائع

easier

أسهل

traditional

تقليدي

great

رائع

lovely

جميل

Help your child learn about things at home.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن الأشياء بالمنزل.





apartment	شقة	was born	وُلد
town	مدينة صغيرة	Thanks	اشكرك
How long?	كم المدة؟	space	مساحة
since	منذ	gift	هدية
parents	الوالدين	view	منظر
job	وظيفة	What about?	ماذا عن؟

Phrases and Prepositions

عبارات الربط والصفات

welcome to مرحبًا
share a room with يشارك غرفة مع

as you can see مثلما ترى
what a great view باله من منظر رائع

Conjugation of verbs

الانواع المختلفة من الافعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

live يعيش
move to (يُزَل) يتقل إلى (يُزَل)
cook يطبخ
share يشارك
prefer يفضل

lived
moved to
cooked
shared
preferred

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

come in يدخل
have to يجب أن
see يرى

came in
had to
saw

Study the following

- 1 Welcome to my new apartment! - مرحبًا بكم في شقتي الجديدة!
- 2 Do you like living here? - هل تحب العيش هنا؟
- 3 How long did you live in your old apartment? - كم المدة التي عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟
- 4 We moved to a closer apartment. - انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.
- 5 What's better about this new apartment? - ما الشيء الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
- 6 My mom says it's much easier to cook in. - تقول أمي أن الطهي أسهل بكثير (بداخل المطبخ).
- 7 There's more space so we can have a bigger television. - هناك مساحة أكبر لذلك يمكننا امتلاك تلفاز أكبر.

8 They were a gift from Grandma.

- كانوا (الوسادات) هدية من الجدة.

9 I share a room with my sister.

- اشارك غرفة مع اختي.

10 The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!

- الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!

11 Where do you live?

- أين تسكن (تعيش)؟

12 Do you live in a house or an apartment?

- هل تعيش في منزل ام شقة؟

1. Work with a partner. Discuss:

اعمل مع زميلك وناقش الآتي:

1- Where do you live? Do you live in a house or an apartment?

2- Describe your house or apartment. Is it big or small? Is it modern or old?

3- Say if you like your house or apartment.

2. Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

armchair - balcony - cushion - closet - elevator - oven - shower - television

1



elevator

2



3



4



5



6



7



8



3. Complete the mindmap :

اكمل الخريطة الذهنية:

اكتب الأشياء الآتية عند الصجرة المناسبة لها.

armchair - bed - cushion - closet - oven - shower - television - cushion



4 Listen and read. Why is Fareeda happy?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

Dina : How long did you live in your old apartment?

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?

Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?

Fareeda: Yes as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!



5 Listen again. Number the rooms in the order you hear them:

استمع مرة أخرى وارقم الغرف بالترتيب الذي تسمعه في النص.

bedrooms..... kitchen¹ balcony bathrooms living room

6 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد ما إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ في كراسك.

- 1- Fareeda prefers her old apartment.
- 2- Fareeda's family lived in the old apartment for 12 years.
- 3- Fareeda has her own bedroom in the new apartment.
- 4- Dina likes the new apartment.

☐
☐
☐
☐




Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Fatma lives in a modern
☐ a street ☐ b city ☐ c apartment ☐ d house
- Fatma has three in the living room.
☐ a closets ☐ b showers ☐ c cushion ☐ d armchairs
- Fatma bakes bread in the
☐ a oven ☐ b closet ☐ c cushion ☐ d elevator
- The is next to the bedroom in Fatma's apartment.
☐ a balcony ☐ b living room ☐ c kitchen ☐ d bathroom



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I can see a great view from our
☐ a shower ☐ b oven ☐ c balcony ☐ d closet
- My sister can sleep on her small
☐ a elevator ☐ b cushion ☐ c television ☐ d oven
- Dina a room with her younger sister.
☐ a shares ☐ b comes ☐ c cooks ☐ d moves
- In the evening, I watched a film on
☐ a shower ☐ b armchair ☐ c television ☐ d elevator



3 Read the text and answer the questions:

(العلوم الحديثة ٢٠٢٣)

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mona moved to a new
☐ a school ☐ b class ☐ c apartment ☐ d city

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



2. We cook food in the _____

- ☐ apartment ☐ bedroom ☐ television ☐ oven

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. do - live - Where - you?

2. balcony - is - The - too - fantastic.

3. moved - apartment - to - a closer - We.

4. were - a - from - They - Grandma - gift.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what about the bedrooms

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من ٣٠ كلمة عن:

ما الذي أعجبك في شقتك الجديدة؟

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- When did you move to your new apartment?

2- How is your new apartment?

2

My perfect room

استمع إلى المقردات.



Adjectives & opposites

الصفات والمضادات

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار
on the wall	على الحائط / الجدار

in the middle of the room

next to

في منتصف الحجرة
بجوار

howler monkey	قرد المواء (سعدان المواء)
a local villager	احد سكان القرية المحليين

deep
path

عميق / بعيد في عمق....
طريق

perfect	رائع / مثالي
poster	ملصق
dark	مظلم
alone	وحيد
make friends	يكون صداقات
scientist	عالم
frightening	مرعب / مخيف
interested in	مهتم بـ
do some research	يقوم بعمل بعض الابحاث

nearby / close	قريب
jungle	غابة
heavy rain	مطر غزير
go forward	يذهب للامام
go back toward	يذهب للخلف تجاه
suddenly	فجاء
indeed	بالفعل
on holiday	في اجازة
sculpture	تمثال
cases	حقائب

Conjugation of verbs

رسمي و فاعل المفعول

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
die يموت	died	sit يجلس	sat
miss يفتقد / يفوت	missed	eat يأكل	ate
smile يبتسم	smiled	leave يغادر	left
try يحاول	tried	go يذهب	went
visit يزور	visited	meet يقابل	met
love يحب	loved	tell يخبر	told
look up ينظر لأعلى	looked up	set out يبدأ رحلة	set out
shout يصرخ	shouted	know يعرف	knew
carry يحمل	carried	wear يرتدي	wore
create ينشئ	created	come يأتي	came

Definitions

تعريفات

unfriendly غير ودود not kind to someone

uncomfortable غير مريح something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body

unlucky غير محظوظ something bad happens to you without a reason

unsafe غير آمن dangerous

unhappy غير سعيد sad

unfair غير عادل something that happens that isn't morally right or fair





Study the following

- 1 On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.
- على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب.
- 2 On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
- على الحائط يوجد الكثير من الملصقات الخاصة بالحيوانات.
- 3 My uncle is a scientist and loves animals.
- عمي عالم وهو يحب الحيوانات.
- 4 The people were very friendly and helped him with his work.
- كان الناس ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله.
- 5 He was very interested in howler monkeys.
- كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرود العواء.
- 6 He knew he was very close to them.
- كان يعلم أنه قريب جدًا منهم.
- 7 It was very heavy rain.
- كان هناك أمطار غزيرة جدًا.
- 8 There was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back.
- كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو للخلف.
- 9 Suddenly, lots of water came toward him.
- فجأة جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه.
- 10 He was very frightened.
- كان خائفًا جدًا.
- 11 My uncle was very happy indeed!
- كان عمي سعيدًا جدًا حقًا!
- 12 He's very unlucky because he misses the bus.
- إنه غير محظوظ للغاية لأنه لم يلحق بالأتوبيس.
- 13 She's very unhappy- she never smiles or tries to make friends.
- إنها غير سعيدة للغاية فهي لا تبتسم أبدًا أو تحاول تكوين صداقات.
- 14 She created a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
- صنعت تمثالًا رائعًا من القمامة.
- 15 We carried our heavy cases to the car.
- حملنا حقائبنا الثقيلة إلى السيارة.



The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1

نستخدم
زمن الماضي
البسيط

• للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.

- للتعبير عن فعل حدث مرة واحدة في الماضي أو فعل حدث عدة مرات في الماضي أو حدث كان حقيقة لفترة من الوقت في الماضي.

- I **visited** her house when I **was** five.

- We **went** to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

• يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من:

بأقي الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- I **met** her in Zagazig two years ago.

• تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة.

أولاً، الأفعال المنتظمة: هي الأفعال التي تضيف إليها (ed) في الماضي.

want → wanted	help → helped
----------------------	----------------------

- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) تضيف إليه (d) فقط في الماضي.

die → died	like → liked
-------------------	---------------------

- وإذا انتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied).

study → studied	carry → carried
------------------------	------------------------

ثانياً، الأفعال غير المنتظمة: وهي الأفعال التي لا يضاف إليها (ed) في الماضي.

come → came	eat → ate	go → went
verb to be {		
am / is → was		
are → were		
have / has → had	do / does → did	

• ننفي الفعل في الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

2

Negative

النفي

مصدر الفعل + **didn't** + فعل

فعل في التصريف الثاني + **was / were** + فاعل

- He **didn't go** to the park.

- He **wasn't** at the park.

وفي السؤال نستخدم:

3

؟ مصدر الفعل + Inf. + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

Question

السؤال

- When **did** people start to **live** in Egypt?

أو يمكن ان يبدأ السؤال بـ Did وتكون الاجابة No, or Yes

- Did they **write** the homework?

- Yes, they **did**. اجابة مثبتة No, they **didn't**. اجابة في النفي

4

Key words

الكلمات
الحالة

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past
– ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

The prefix (un-) (un-) بمعنى

هناك بعض المقاطع التي تسمى بادئات والتي يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال
البادئة (un-) والتي تعطي النفي من الكلمة.

happy → unhappy safe → unsafe

⊙ لاحظ:

- unhappy = not happy uncomfortable = not comfortable

- He looks **unhappy**. = He **doesn't** look happy.

- The armchair is very **uncomfortable**. = The armchair **isn't** comfortable.

1 Read about the bedroom :

اقرأ عن غرفة النوم:

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Match the words to their meanings:

صل الكلمات بمعانيها.

1 unfriendly

a. sad

2 uncomfortable

b. dangerous

3 unlucky

c. something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body

4 unsafe

d. something that happens that isn't

5 unhappy

e. morally right or fair

6 unfair

f. something bad happens to you without a reason

g. not kind to someone

3 Complete the sentences with the words in Exercise 2:

اكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين السابق.

1- His cat died last week. He was very

2- I never sit in that green armchair - it's very

3- Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very

4- That's very - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!

5- He's very because he missed the bus.

6- She's very - she never smiles or tries to make friends.



4 Underline the past simple verbs in the text. Mark the regular verbs (R) and the irregular verbs (I):

ضع خط تحت الافعال التي في الماضي البسيط في النص. اكتب (R) عند الافعال المنتظمة و اكتب (I) عند الافعال غير المنتظمة.

استمع إلى النص



My uncle is a **scientist**⁽¹⁾ and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in **South America**⁽²⁾ for work. He loved it there because the people were very **friendly**⁽³⁾ and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something **frightening**⁽⁴⁾ happened to him and he was **lucky**⁽⁵⁾ he lived to tell me about it! He was very **interested in**⁽⁶⁾ **howler monkeys**⁽⁷⁾ and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A **local villager**⁽⁸⁾ told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be **unsafe**⁽⁹⁾."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very **close to**⁽¹⁰⁾ them. Then the rain started. It was very **heavy rain**⁽¹¹⁾. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the **path**⁽¹²⁾ to go forward or back.

Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy **indeed**⁽¹³⁾!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- عالم
- ٢- أمريكا الجنوبية
- ٣- ودودين
- ٤- مخيف / مرعب
- ٥- مخطوط
- ٦- مهتم بـ
- ٧- قرد العواء
- ٨- أحد سكان القرية
- المحليين
- ٩- غير آمن
- ١٠- قريب لـ
- ١١- مطر غزير
- ١٢- طريق
- ١٣- بالفعل



Howler monkeys in the jungle

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام الافعال التي بين الاقواس بصيغة الماضي البسيط:

- 1- When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we (meet) some new friends.
- 2- She (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
- 3- We (carry) our heavy cases to the car.
- 4- His grandma (go) to Aswan last year.
- 5- Yesterday, my cousin (come) to visit us.



6 Make the sentences negative:

كوّن النفي من الجمل:

- 1- He traveled all over Egypt. He didn't travel all over Egypt.
- 2- He ate Om Ali in Tanta. _____
- 3- It rained yesterday. _____
- 4- They came here by airplane. _____



Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The opposite of safe is

- ☐ a unhappy ☐ b dangerous ☐ c unfair ☐ d unlucky

2. Don't sleep on this bed, it's very

- ☐ a comfortable ☐ b uncomfortable ☐ c fair ☐ d unfriendly

3. It was very heavy, the ground was very wet.

- ☐ a sky ☐ b rain ☐ c sun ☐ d path

4. On the, there is a closet.

- ☐ a night ☐ b right ☐ c write ☐ d light

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص كلمات من الإطار:

move - better - closet - left - share

In my new apartment, I have a big bedroom. It's much ① than my old bedroom. I ② it with my sister. There are two beds. My sister's bed is on the ③ On the wall, there's a clock. There's a brown ④ next to the armchair.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the howler monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were unfriendly to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "unfriendly" means

- ☐ a sad ☐ b dangerous ☐ c not kind ☐ d lucky

2. The text is mainly about visiting the

- ☐ a school ☐ b zoo ☐ c park ☐ d desert



Help your child deal with such questions. يساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why was dad angry?
4. What did Amr try to do?



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The baby is crying. He is (happy).
2. (Do) you visit your grandparents yesterday?
3. There was water everywhere, we (don't) go outside.
4. I (meet) her in Cairo two years ago.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. Egypt - traveled - He - all - over.
2. are - lots - of - posters - There - of animals.
3. grandma - year - Aswan - went - to - last - His.
4. uncle - loves - is - a scientist - My - and - animals.



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- i met Miss manar yesterday.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

saw howler monkeys - unsafe to go

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



LESSON

3

Ancient Egyptian Homes



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المقدرات.



mud bricks	الطوب اللبن (طوب من الطين)
roof	سطح المنزل
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص
gate	بوابة

pot	إناء
oven	فرن
sleeping area	منطقة النوم

Similar words



كلمات متشابهة

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
the Nile	نهر النيل
drinking	لشرب
cooking	الطبخ
washing	الغسل / الغسل
strong	قوى
cool	بارد (جولطيف)
flat	مسطح / مستوي
hot nights	ليالي حارة
furniture	أثاث
different from	مختلف عن
papyrus	البردي
insects	حشرات

the same	نفس الشيء
outside	خارج
crops	محاصيل
wooden box	صندوق خشبي
floor	طابق / دور في مبنى
the countryside	الريف
chicken	دجاجة
banks of the river	ضفاف النهر
by	بجوار
special style	نمط خاص
wind	رياح
all right	بخير
near	قريب من - بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs - صيغ الافعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

use	يستخدم
paint	يطلّ / يدهن
cook	يطبخ / يطهو
relax	يسترخي
cover	يغطي
save	يوفر / يدخر
join	يربط
store	يخزن

used
painted
cooked
relaxed
covered
saved
joined
stored

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

make	يجعل / يصنع
keep	يحافظ على / يربى
have	يملك
sleep	ينام
build	يبنى
grow	ينمو / يزرع
blow	يهب (للرياح)
feel	يشعر
fall	يسقط

made
kept
had
slept
built
grew
blew
felt
fell

Study the following

- 1 In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.

- في مصر القديمة بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.

- 2 They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing.

- استخدموا مياه النيل للشرب والطبخ والغسيل.

- 3 They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses.

- كما استخدموا طين من النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم.

- 4 The mud bricks made very strong walls.

- صنع الطوب اللبن جدرانًا (حوائط) قوية جدًا.

- 5 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool.

- أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم.

- 6 Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.

- قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة.

- 7 Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

- كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية، والتي كانت أكثر جزء بارد في المنزل.

8 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

- كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفاً تماماً عن وقتنا الحالي.

9 There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

- كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها.

10 They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.

- استخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب.

11 In every home there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

- في كل منزل، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس.

12 Not many people had beds or chairs.

- لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كرسي.

13 They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج هناك.

Work with a partner. Discuss:

اعمل مع زميلك وناقش:

- 1- What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like?
- 2- Where did people build their homes in Ancient Egypt?
- 3- What did people use to build their homes?

2 Read the passage. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones in your notebook:

اقرأ النص. حدد ما إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ في كراسك.

استمع إلى النص:



In Ancient Egypt⁽¹⁾, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks⁽²⁾ made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep⁽³⁾ their homes cool⁽⁴⁾. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs⁽⁵⁾, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed⁽⁶⁾, and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture⁽⁷⁾ in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

١- مصر القديمة

٢- الطوب اللبن

٣- يحافظ على

٤- بارد

٥- اسطح مستوية

٦- استرخوا

٧- أثاث

There were **reed mats**⁽⁸⁾ to sit and sleep on. They used **papyrus**⁽⁹⁾ to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for **storing**⁽¹⁰⁾ crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

- ٨- حصير من البوص
- ٩- البردي
- ١٠- تخزين
- ١١- طباقان/ دوران
- ١٢- مساحة

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with **two floors**⁽¹¹⁾. This saved **space**⁽¹²⁾ so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- 1- A lot of people made their homes near the Nile.
- 2- In Ancient Egypt, people used water from the Red Sea for drinking.
- 3- The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool.
- 4- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes wasn't the same as today.
- 5- The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in metal boxes.
- 6- The houses in cities usually had one floor only.

3 Read and listen to the poem:

اقرأ واستمع إلى القصيدة.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

استمع إلى النص.



4 Listen and write the labels on the ancient Egyptian house:

استمع واكتب الاشياء داخل المنزل المصري القديم:

gate - oven - pot - roof - reed mat - sleeping area





Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات:



(ee) / i: / words



tree

شجرة



sheep

خروف



seed

بذرة



queen

ملكة

(oo) / u: / words



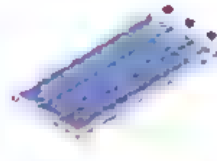
spoon

ملعقة



roof

سطح



pool

حمام سباحة



school

مدرسة



tool

أداة



food

طعام



zoo

حديقة الحيوان

smooth

ناعم / أملس

noon

فترة الظهيرة

(oo) / U / words



wood

خشب



book

كتاب



cook

يطبخ / طبّاخ



good

جيد



wool

صوف

(oo) / /N / words



blood

دم



flood

فيضان

ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة (ee / oo) في بعض الكلمات.

- حيث ينطق حرفي (ee) مثل نطق صوت (e) الممتد / long e 'i: / لكن حرفي (oo) يمكن أن ينطق بثلاث طرق كما يلي:

١- مثل صوت (o) الممتد النطق long o مثل الرمز الصوتي /u:/ كما في الكلمات: spoon - roof - school - pool

٢- مثل الرمز الصوتي /ʊ/ كما في الكلمات: wood - book - cook

٣- مثل الرمز الصوتي /ʌ/ كما في الكلمات: flood - blood

1 Write the double vowel words with ee or oo:

اكتب الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة ee أو oo.

1



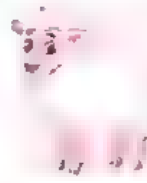
tr ee

2



sp _ _ _

3



sh _ _ _

4



r _ _ _ _

5



s _ _ _ _

6



s _ _ _ _

7



q _ _ _ _

8



p _ _ _ _

2 Listen and write the words you hear. Then listen again and repeat:

استمع واكتب الكلمات التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وردد.



استمع إلى النص



1 wood



2 _ _ _ _ _



3 _ _ _ _ _



4 _ _ _ _ _



5 _ _ _ _ _



6 _ _ _ _ _

3 Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table. Then listen and check:

اقرأ وضع الكلمات التي تحتوي على (oo) في العمود الصحيح في الجدول ثم استمع وتأكد.

school - book - flood - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo -

wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood

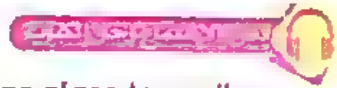


Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ancient Egyptians used the to travel from one place to another.

- ☐ a papyrus ☐ b Nile ☐ c bricks ☐ d roofs

2. Ancient Egyptians used bricks to build their houses.

- ☐ a sand ☐ b mud ☐ c sea ☐ d milk

3. The roofs were the part in the house.

- ☐ a hottest ☐ b smallest ☐ c oldest ☐ d coolest

4. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to windows and doors.

- ☐ a build ☐ b cover ☐ c keep ☐ d clean



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

storing - bricks - near - painted - relaxed

The Ancient Egyptians were great people and builders, too. Their homes were

① the Nile. They used mud ② to make the walls strong.

They ③ their houses white to make them cooler. They used large pots and baskets for ④ crops and wooden boxes for clothes.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. had - two - in cities - floors - The houses.

.....

2. many - people - beds - had - Not - or chairs.

.....

3. their - homes - did - people - What - use - to build?

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4. did - build - their - Where - homes - people?

5. painted - their - People - white - homes.

6. grew - chickens - and - They - kept - vegetables.



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian (is) very different from today.
- Many years ago, mud bricks (make) very strong walls.
- The Ancient Egyptians (store) their clothes in metal boxes in the past.
- What (do) Ancient Egyptians use to store their crops in the the past?



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Ancient egyptians kept their homes cool



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Homes in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

keep their homes cool - had flat roofs



Lesson

4

★ Writing

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



unusual homes	منازل غريبة
blogging	التدوين في مدونة
ecological	بيئي / صديق للبيئة
farmhouse	منزل ريفي
landscape	منظر طبيعي
awful	فظيع
annoying	مزعج

awesome	رائع
boring	ممل
funny	مضحك
brilliant	رائع
cool	جميل
friendly	ودود
interesting	شيق

Useful phrases

فrases مفيدة

week	اسبوع
topic	موضوع
architect	مهندس معماري
Netherlands	هولندا
online	عبر / على الانترنت
upside down	مقلوب رأساً على عقب
actually	فعلياً / بالفعل
modern	حديث

at the top	على القمة / في أعلى
light	ضوء
local people	أشخاص / سكان محليون
farm	مزرعة
field	حقول
heat	حرارة
energy	طاقة

Conjugation of verbs

تدوين في ثلاث جمل

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

change	يغير
work	يعمل
fit	يلئم / يناسب

changed
worked
fitted

write	يكتب
take	يأخذ
find	يجد
get	يحصل على

wrote
took
found
got

Definitions

تعريفات

blogging التدوين في مدونة to write about something in an online blog

ecological بيئي / صديق للبيئة related to living thing and their environments



Study the following

- 1 I like blogging about different things. - أنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
- 2 This week I'm writing about unusual homes. - اكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غريبة.
- 3 This topic is very interesting for me. - هذا الموضوع مثير جدا للاهتمام بالنسبة لي.
- 4 I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. - لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا على الإنترنت.
- 5 It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. - إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم يغيره الناس لي جعلوه حديث.
- 6 Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape. - يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيداً مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
- 7 It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. - كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
- 8 What do you think of it? - ما رأيك في ذلك؟
- 9 Do you like it? - هل أحببت ذلك؟

1 Read Dalida's blog and answer her question : اقرأ مدونة داليدا واجب عن سؤالها.

Wednesday, 8th November

استمع إلى النص



Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging⁽¹⁾ about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual⁽²⁾ homes. This topic⁽³⁾ is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect⁽⁴⁾, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places⁽⁵⁾. It's really awesome! I found this unusual house in the

Netherlands⁽⁶⁾ online⁽⁷⁾ - it's upside down⁽⁸⁾! It is actually⁽⁹⁾ an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light⁽¹⁰⁾. Local people like it because it fits⁽¹¹⁾ in very well with the local landscape⁽¹²⁾, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological⁽¹³⁾ because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊
What do you think of it? Do you like it?



Upside down house in the Netherlands

Arabic Meaning

- 1- التدوين
- 2- غريب
- 3- موضوع
- 4- مهندس معماري
- 5- أماكن رائعة
- 6- هولندا
- 7- عبر الإنترنت
- 8- مقلوب رأساً على عقب
- 9- فعلياً
- 10- ضوء
- 11- يتناسب
- 12- منظر طبيعي
- 13- صديق للبيئة

2 Decide if the sentences about Dalida's blog are True (T) or False (F)

حدد إذا كانت الجمل الآتية عن مدونة داليدا صحيحة أو خاطئة.

1. The house is in France.
2. It's in a city.
3. Dalida visited the house.
4. It's ecologically friendly.

Tip!

Writing a blog

ارشادات كتابة مدونة على الإنترنت.

- 1- Write about something you like and enjoy.
- 2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
- 3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 😊 😞 😠 😡
- 4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
- 5- Check that your spelling is correct.

3 Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting. Sort the adjectives into positive and negative adjectives:

يُضفي استخدام الصفات تشويقاً للمدونة. صنف الصفات إلى ايجابية وسلبية.

awful - annoying - awesome - boring -
funny - brilliant - cool - friendly - interesting

Positive	Negative
funny	awful

4 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or home and write about it. Write 30-40 words:

اكتب مدونتك. أوجد منزلاً أو بيتاً غريباً. واكتب عنه من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة.

Write:

- where it is and give some information about it.
- what you think about it and why.
- ask the readers about their opinion.



Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الاستماع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

تمت الاستماع اقرأ الجواب



1. Dalia's uncle is a/an

- ☐ a architect ☐ b farmer ☐ c teacher ☐ d cook

2. Dalia's uncle lives in an old

- ☐ a houseboat ☐ b apartment ☐ c farmhouse ☐ d town

3. were very funny.

- ☐ a Chickens ☐ b Goats ☐ c Cows ☐ d Sheep

4. The are brilliant.

- ☐ a crops ☐ b farmers ☐ c fields ☐ d animals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإصا:

upside - blogging - architect - ecological - found

Yesterday, my teacher asked us to do homework about unusual homes around the world. My mom helped me because she's an ① We ② an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It's ③ down. It's also very ④ I liked it very much.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. like - Do - it - you?

.....

2. is - also - ecological - very - It.

.....

3. think - do - you - What - of - it?

.....

4. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual.

.....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5. interesting - is - The topic - for me - very.

6. found - in - the Netherlands - this unusual - I - house.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This week, I'm (**write**) about different things.
2. Do you (**liked**) this unusual home?
3. My mom is an architect and she (**take**) me to some brilliant places.
4. The windows (**is**) on the top.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do you think of it

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجايب آخر الوحدة

Unusual Home

Guiding questions

- 1- Where is the unusual home?
- 2- Why is the home unusual?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





Review



Key vocabulary

At home في المنزل



armchair

كرسي ذو مسدين



bed

سرير



cushion

وسادة



closet

دولاب / خزانة



elevator

مصعد



shower

دش



television

تليفزيون



oven

فرن

mud bricks

الطوب اللبن

roof

سطح المنزل

reed mat

حصيرة من البوص

gate

بوابة

unusual homes

منازل غريبة

blogging

التدوين في مدونة

ecological

يشي / صديق للبيئة

farmhouse

منزل ريفي

landscape

منظر طبيعي

awful

فظيع

annoying

مزعج

oven

فرن

sleeping area

منطقة النوم

awesome

رائع

boring

ممل

funny

مضحك

brilliant

رائع

cool

جميل

friendly

ودود

interesting

شيق

howler monkey

قرود العواء

a local villager

أحد سكان القرى المحليين

deep

عميق

path

طريق



Adjectives & opposites

صفات وتعريفات

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

on the right

على اليمين

on the left

على اليسار

on the wall

على الحائط/ الجدار

in the middle of the room

في منتصف الحجرة

بجوار

Conjugation of verbs

تدوير صفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

live	يعيش
move to	ينتقل إلى (بمزل)
share	يشارك
die	يموت
miss	يقتصد / يفوت
smile	يبتسم
try	يحاول
carry	يحمل
create	يشي
use	يستخدم
cook	يطبخ / يطهو
save	يوفر / يدخر
work	يعمل
fit	يلئم / يناسب

lived
moved to
shared
died
missed
smiled
tried
carried
created
used
cooked
saved
worked
fitted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

see	يرى
sit	يجلس
eat	يأكل
leave	يفادر
meet	يقابل
tell	يخير
set out	يبدأ رحلة
keep	يحافظ على / يرى
sleep	ينام
build	يبنى
grow	ينمو / يزرع
blow	يهب (للرياح)
feel	يشعر
fall	يسقط
write	يكتب

saw
sat
ate
left
met
told
set out
kept
slept
built
grew
blew
felt
fell
wrote

The past simple tense

الزمن الماضي البسيط

1

نستخدم
الزمن الماضي
البسيط

● للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.

- I **visited** her house when I **was** five

● يتكون الزمن الماضي البسيط من:

- باقى الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- I **met** her in Cairo three years ago.

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

اولاً، الأفعال المنتظمة، هي الأفعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted

help → helped

ثانياً، الأفعال غير المنتظمة، وهى الأفعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

come → came

eat → ate

go → went

verb to be {
am / is → was
are → were

have / has → had

do / does → did

● لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + **didn't** + فاعلفعل فى التصريف الثانى + **never** + فاعل- He **didn't go** to the park.- He **never went** to the park.

● وفى السؤال نستخدم:

؟ مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + فاعل + **did** + كلمة استفهام- When **did** people start to **live** in Egypt?● أو ممكن ان نبدأ السؤال بـ **Did** وتكون الاجابة **No, or Yes**:- **Did** they **write** the homework?- **Yes**, they **did**. اجابة مثبتة **No**, they **didn't**. اجابة فى النفي

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past

– ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

2

Negative

النفي

3

Question

السؤال

4

Key words

الكلمات
الدالة

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words:

Lesson 1

Your new apartment

- 1 We moved to a new apartment last week. My father had a new job. He bought a fantastic apartment. There are three bedrooms. There's a big television in the living room. The new kitchen is bigger than the old one. It's easier to cook in.

Lesson 2

In the jungle

- 2 I went to the jungle with my father yesterday. My father is a scientist. He did some research on howler monkeys. We saw many animals in the jungle. It's unsafe to go to the jungle alone. I enjoyed my day.

Lesson 3

Homes in Ancient Egypt

- 3 Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes. They used mud from the river to make mud bricks. The mud bricks made very strong walls. They helped to keep their homes cool, too. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

Lesson 4

Unusual homes

- 4 I read a book about unusual homes. There was an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It was upside down. It was very ecological and local people liked it. It was so cool.

Lesson 5

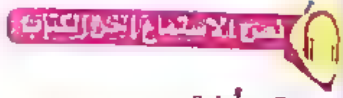
The furniture in Ancient Egypt

- 5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.





A- Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختر:

1. My uncle is a (farmer - teacher - vet)
2. My uncle loves (food - animals - insects)
3. He has children. (one - four - two)

B- Language Functions

Read and complete the dialogue with the words below:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات في الأسفل:

apartment - Twenty - live - long

- A : Where do you ❶ ?
- B : I live in an ❷
- A : How ❸ did you live in your apartment?
- B : ❹ years, since I was born.

C- Reading Comprehension

Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاستئلة التالية:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm. There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?
.....
2. What does Magdy's father have?
.....



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاستئلة.

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. There are rooms in our house. (three - four - six)
 4. They are a family. (nice - sad - happy)
 5. Magdy loves his (living room - bathroom - bedroom)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I visited his house when I five.
☐ a was ☐ b am ☐ c are
 2. the left, there is my sister's bed.
☐ a In ☐ b At ☐ c On
 3. On the wall , there are lots of of animals.
☐ a boxes ☐ b pens ☐ c posters
 4. His cat died last week. He was very
☐ a unhappy ☐ b happy ☐ c nice
 5 I her in Cairo two years ago.
☐ a meet ☐ b met ☐ c meets

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - My - room - nice - living.

2. very - topic - interesting - This.

3. airplane - came - here - They - by.

4. blogging - different - like - I - things.

5. big - your - Is - small - or - apartment?



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ahmed lives in a house.

- ☐ a narrow ☐ b small ☐ c big ☐ d dirty

2. Ahmed shares his bedroom with his

- ☐ a cousin ☐ b sister ☐ c brother ☐ d parents

3. There's a/an next to Ahmed's bed.

- ☐ a desk ☐ b armchair ☐ c cushion ☐ d closet

4. There are posters of on Ahmed's bedroom.

- ☐ a plants ☐ b animals ☐ c player ☐ d fruit

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's a balcony in my

- ☐ a living room ☐ b oven ☐ c elevator ☐ d closet

2. Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to make homes

- ☐ a strong ☐ b hot ☐ c long ☐ d weak

3. I like sitting on this armchair. It's very

- ☐ a comfortable ☐ b unfriendly ☐ c unlucky ☐ d unsafe

4. My uncle is very in howler monkeys.

- ☐ a unlucky ☐ b interested ☐ c scared ☐ d safe

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

local - howler - scientist - path - frightened

I went with my uncle to the jungle last week. My uncle is a ① and he is interested in animals. He wanted to do research about ② monkeys. The ③ villagers helped him, but I was very ④

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different types of homes all over the world. Many people live in apartments in big cities. These apartments are in big buildings. The buildings have many floors so people use elevators to go to their apartments. People live in houses in the countryside. The houses have gardens around them. On hot nights people sleep on roofs because it is cooler there. In the desert people sleep in tents.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
☐ a people ☐ b houses ☐ c roofs ☐ d floors
- The underlined word "them" refers to
☐ a gardens ☐ b cities ☐ c houses ☐ d deserts

Answer the following questions:

- Why do people use elevators? -
- What do people do on hot nights? -

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- heavy - was - very - rain - It -
- homes - did - people - What - use to - build? -

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I couldn't wear my new shoes. They were (comfortable).
- Last week, my parents (buy) a new apartment.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you know about Ancient egyptian homes?

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

The furniture in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

reed mats to sit and sleep - large pots for storing crops

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

My
society

At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الأمراض والعلاج.
2. Practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
3. Listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.
4. Learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".
- يتعلم الطالب استخدام بادئات الكلام لاعطاء عكس المعنى (un - ir - il - im).
5. Understand the difference between /l/ and /v/ sounds.
- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين /ل/ و /ف/.
6. Write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن كيف تكون بصحة جيدة.
7. Plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
- يضع الطالب خطة ما الذي يجب وضعه في صندوق الإسعافات الأولية ويعمل ملصق.



Lesson

1

★ THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!



New Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



backache
ألم بالظهر



cold
برد



sore throat
التهاب بالحنك



headache
صداع



earache
ألم بالأذن

illnesses

الأمراض



toothache
ألم بالأسنان



cough
كحة / سعال

Other words

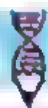
كلمات أخرى

problem	مشكلة
ankle	كاحل - رصغ القدم
tooth	سنة
stomach	معدة
shoulder	كتف
swimming	السباحة
dentist	طبيب أسنان

coach	مدرب
feel better	يشعر بحسن
milk	لبن
honey	عسل
practice	تدريب - تمرين
club	نادي
really	حقًا / جدًا



Unit 8



good	جيد
OK	بصحة جيدة
bad	سيء

careful	حريص
worried	قلق

Comparative & Superlative

Regular verbs	أفعال منتظمة	Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hope	أمل : hoped	have / has يملك - يصاب بـ	had
talk	تكلم talked	hurt يؤلم	hurt
		say يقول	said

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

- What's the matter? مما تشكو؟

My + عضو الجسم + hurts.

والرد تستخدم،

1
لِسؤال شخص
مما تشكو؟

- My tooth hurts.

- Can I + مصدر الفعل +? هل من الممكن أن.....؟

- Can I have some milk and honey?

2
لطلب شيء
بطريقة مهذبة

Study the following

- Did you have a good day at the club? هل قضيت يوماً ممتعاً في النادي؟
- Only five people came to the club today. أتى خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم.
- Are you OK? هل أنت بخير؟
- My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. أصيب صديقي طارق بالتمزق في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.
- Two of my friends have a cold. أصيب اثنين من زملائي بالبرد.
- The coach told us to be careful. أخبرنا المدرب بأن نكون حذرين.
- How do you feel? كيف تشعر؟
- I hope they'll feel better tomorrow. أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غداً.

- 9 I'm worried about my friends. - أنا قلق علي زملائي.
 10 What's the matter? - مما تشكو؟
 11 Can I have some milk and honey? - هل ممكن أن أتناول بعض من اللبن والعسل؟
 12 It really hurts. - إنها تؤلمني حقًا.
 13 Amr has an earache from swimming. - عمرو مصاب بألم في الأذن من السباحة.

1 Listen and read: How does Fares feel today? استمع واقرأ، كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

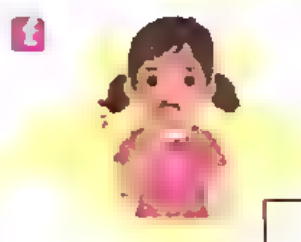
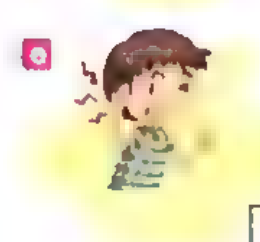
استمع إلى النص:



Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
Fares : Not really. Only five people came to the club today!
Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?
Fares : No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.
Mom : What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.
Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
Mom : How do you feel?
Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
Mom : I hope so, too!

2 Listen again and number the photos in the order that Mom and Fares talk about them:

استمع مرة أخرى وارقم الصور حسب الحوار السابق بين فارس ووالدته.



3 Listen again. Circle the correct words. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة، ثم استمع وتأكد.

1. Fares had a bad / good day at the club.
2. Tarek hurt his ankle / ear at football practice.
3. Fares thinks Lama went to the doctor / dentist.
4. Two of Fares's friends have a cold / an earache.
5. Fares's leg / back hurts.

4 Read the words in the box. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, then listen and check:



اقرأ الكلمات في المربع. أنظر إلى الصور وأكمل الجمل، ثم استمع وتأكد.

cough - headache - shoulder - toothache

1



Mom: What's the matter, Dina?

Dina: I have a toothache.

Dina: Yes, my tooth hurts!

2



Mom, can I have some milk and

honey for my cough, please?

3



Ouch! My shoulder hurts!

4



Mom: What's the matter, Wael?

Does your stomach hurt?

Wael: No, I have a headache.



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Amr had a

- ☐ a headache ☐ b toothache ☐ c backache ☐ d sore throat

2. Amr didn't come to the practice.

- ☐ a tennis ☐ b basketball ☐ c football ☐ d swimming

3. Amr went to the

- ☐ a vet ☐ b dentist ☐ c nurse ☐ d doctor

4. The doctor told Amr to have drinks

- ☐ a cold ☐ b hot ☐ c sweet ☐ d unhealthy



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went to the dentist because I had a/an

- ☐ a earache ☐ b headache ☐ c toothache ☐ d backache

2. The coach told us to be

- ☐ a care ☐ b careful ☐ c careless ☐ d bad

3. I'm about my sick friends.

- ☐ a worried ☐ b good ☐ c happy ☐ d lucky

4. I have a cough, so I should home.

- ☐ a clean ☐ b stay ☐ c hope ☐ d leave



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

Fares had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practise last night. And Amr had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Fares was very worried about his friends.

النص مكتوب في الصفحة ٢٢٢

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Fares's

- ☐ a parents ☐ b family ☐ c friends ☐ d sister

2. Fares was very about his friends.

- ☐ a happy ☐ b worried ☐ c unfair ☐ d tired

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Fares go yesterday?

4. Why did Lamma go to the dentist?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. matter - is - What - the?2. I - have - Can - milk - some?3. Ali - throat - a sore - has.4. should - stay - We - home.**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My tooth (hurting).2. Can I (has) some honey?3. How (does) you feel?4. What (are) the matter?**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do you feel

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Autophache

Guiding phrases

tooth hurts - go to the dentist

Lesson

2

★ How are you?



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



unwell مريض ليس بحالة جيدة
relative (s) قريب (أقارب)
staff هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)
helpful مفيد

family members أفراد الأسرة
crowded مزدحم
injections حقن
corridor طرقة - ممر



sick person = patient شخص مريض
alone بمفرده
instead of بدلاً من
Don't worry لا تقلق
cut جرح
text نص
class فصل - حصة

care for يعني به
bridge جسر - كوبري
throat حلق
playground ملعب
bandage ضمادة
feel well يشعر أنه بخير
southern جوي

Adjectives & opposites

صفات ومضاداتها

responsible	مسؤول	irresponsible	غير مسؤول
legal	شرعي - قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني
moral	أخلاقي	immoral	غير أخلاقي
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم

Conjugation of verbs

(الأمراض والأعراض)

Regular verbs

الافعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

الافعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

stay يقيم - يبقى

stayed

fall يقع / يسقط

fell

clean ينظف

cleaned

come in يدخل

came in

turn يحول - يلف

turned

teach يُدرس / يعلم

taught

care يعني - يهتم

cared

give يعطي

gave

work يعمل

worked

become يصبح

became

treat يعالج

treated

learn يتعلم

learned / learnt

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Verb to have

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب به كالآتي:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **have** } اسم المرض +
 He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **has**

1
have / has
 مصاب به

- I **have** a headache.
- He **has** a sore throat.

③ وللتنفي تستخدم الصيغة التالية،

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **don't have** } اسم المرض +
 He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **doesn't have**

- I **don't** have a headache.
- He **doesn't** have a toothache.

④ وللسؤال تستخدم الصيغة التالية،

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have** } اسم المرض ؟
 Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + **have**

- Do you **have** a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he **have** a cold? Yes, he does. / No he doesn't.

البادئات (Prefixes)

23

- هناك بعض المقاطع التي تسمى بادئات والتي يمكن إضافتها أول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئات (un . ir . il . im) والتي تعطى النفي من الكلمة .
- وتستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لإعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة مثل ،

usual → unusual well → unwell

- تستخدم البادئة "ir" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرف "r" ،
- "ir" → responsible → irresponsible
- تستخدم البادئة "il" عندما تبدأ الصفة بحرف "l" ،
- "il" → legal → illegal
- تستخدم البادئة "im" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرفي "m , p" ،
- "im" → possible → impossible
moral → immoral

Study the following

- 1 Do you have a headache? - هل أنت مصاب بصداع؟
- 2 Does Nader have a headache? - هل نادر مصاب بصداع؟
- 3 I have a cut on my arm. - لدى جرح في ذراعي .
- 4 Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it. - لا تقلق. سوف أنظف الجرح وأضع عليه ضمادة.
- 5 The hospital treats patients from all over the country. - تعالج المستشفى المرضى من كل أنحاء البلاد.
- 6 It is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. - من غير المألوف أن يذهب الشخص المريض للمستشفى بمفرده.
- 7 Family usually go with their unwell relative. - تذهب الأسرة عادة مع الشخص المريض من أقاربهم.
- 8 Some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections. - يتعلم بعض الناس كيفية تغيير الضمادات والبعض الآخر يتعلم كيفية إعطاء الحقن.



- 9 The nurses become teachers and the family members become students.
تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة متعلمين.
- 10 They have classes to teach the families.
لديهم حصص (دروس) لتعليم العائلات (الأسر).
- 11 It also helps the families to care for their relatives.
تساعد أيضًا الأسر في الاهتمام بأقاربهم.
- 12 The staff at this hospital do something special.
تفعل هيئة الموظفين في هذه المستشفى شيئًا مميزًا.

1 Listen and read. What's the matter with Ashraf?

استمع وأقرأ. مما يشكو أشرف؟

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences:

انظر إلى الصور. أكمل الجمل.



Salma



Amir



Reem



Tarek



Lama

1. Amir has a stomachache.

3. a cold.

5. a headache.

2. a toothache.

4. an earache.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جمل أو أسئلة:

1. you / an earache / Do / have / ?

2. sore / a / I / throat / have / .

3. a / has / He / cold /

4. Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

5. he / No, / doesn't / .

4 Read. What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

اقرأ. أي جزء من أجزاء الجسم يؤلم نهلة؟

: Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

: Oh, yes I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

5 Listen and read. Which country is this hospital in?

استمع واقرأ. أي دولة بها المستشفى؟



استمع إلى النص

A special Hospital

In a hospital in **Bangalore**⁽¹⁾, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital **treats**⁽²⁾ patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family **members**⁽³⁾. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital **alone**⁽⁴⁾. Family usually go with their unwell **relative**⁽⁵⁾. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But **instead of**⁽⁶⁾ telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something **special**⁽⁷⁾. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have **classes** to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give **injections**⁽⁸⁾.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- مدينة بانجلور (جنوب الهند)
- ٢- يعالج
- ٣- أعضاء
- ٤- بمفرده
- ٥- قريب
- ٦- بدلا من
- ٧- حقن
- ٨- حقن



Each afternoon, **staff**⁽⁹⁾ from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not **only does**⁽¹⁰⁾ this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home.

The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients **return**⁽¹¹⁾ to the hospital now.

وحيلة الموظفين
يلبس فقط
يرجع

6 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box:

أكمل ملخص النص بالكلمات من بين الأقواس:

helpful - hospital - injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a **1** in India. It is a very busy place that treats **2** from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many **3** so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the **4** teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an **5** This is **6** for both the staff and the patients.

7 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix un-:

أعد كتابة الجمل ليعطى عكس المعنى. استخدم البادئة "un":

1. Tarek is happy.

2. The bridge is safe.

3. Ramy is fit.

8 Look at the chart. Add the prefix ir-, il-, or im- to these words:

ضع البادئات الآتية (ir, il, im) للكلمات ليعطى عكس المعنى:

1. legal

2. polite

3. moral

4. regular



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My friend Hazem was yesterday.
☐ a good ☐ b ill ☐ c happy ☐ d excited
2. Hazem's hurts.
☐ a ankle ☐ b shoulder ☐ c stomach ☐ d tooth
3. The said to Hazem to stay home.
☐ a parents ☐ b doctor ☐ c teacher ☐ d friend
4. Hazem took the and felt well.
☐ a food ☐ b homework ☐ c medicine ☐ d water



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have a on my arm.
☐ a sore ☐ b cut ☐ c cold ☐ d throat
2. Do you an earache?
☐ a stay ☐ b hope ☐ c have ☐ d see
3. It's helpful for patients to learn how to injections.
☐ a give ☐ b treat ☐ c fall ☐ d return
4. Family usually go to hospitals with their relatives.
☐ a well ☐ b unwell ☐ c impolite ☐ d impossible



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوبن جملاً:

1. I - my - arm - have - a cut - on.
2. it - does - Where - hurt?
3. unwell - go with - usually - Family - their - relative.



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب لصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My Friend Rana (have) an earache.
2. (Do) Emad have a cold?
3. (Doesn't) worry. I'll clean the cut.
4. The opposite of "moral" is (immoral).



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what's the matter

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson

3

The power of honey

Key vocabulary

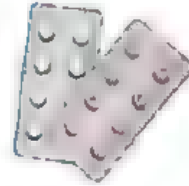
استمع إلى المفردات



bandage
ضمادة



sunscreen
كريم واقى من الشمس



pills
أقراص دواء



honey and lemon
عسل وليمون



wound
جرح



cut knee
جرح بالركبة

treatment

علاج

bacteria

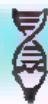
بكتريا

heal

يشفى / يشفى

sunburn

حرق شمس



basbousa

بسبوسة

thousand = 1000

ألف

injures

إصابات

however

بالرغم من / مع ذلك

substance

مادة

medical care

رعاية طبية

recently

حديثاً / مؤخراً

jar

برطمان

illnesses

أمراض

perhaps

ربما

countries

دول - بلاد

types

أنواع



Conjugation of Verb

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

enjoy	يستمتع بـ
kill	يقتل
treat	يعالج
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى
damage	يتلف

enjoyed
killed
treated
healed
damaged

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

cut	يجرح
know	يعرف
make	يصنع
get better	يتحسن

cut
knew
made
got better

Study the following

1 I cut my knee last week.

جرحت ركبتي الأسبوع الماضي.

2 My grandpa put a bandage on it.

وضع جدي ضمادة على الجرح.

3 Did you know that honey isn't only a food?

هل تعلم أن العسل ليس بطعام فقط؟

4 Doctors have used honey for thousands of years.

استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين.

5 It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.

يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.

6 It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors.

تم استخدام (العسل) كعلاج للجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين.

7 Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria.

تحتوي بعض أنواع العسل على أشياء تساعد في قتل البكتيريا.

8 You must be careful.

يجب عليك أن تكون حذرًا.

9 Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth.

العسل هو أكثر مادة مذاقها حلو على وجه الأرض.

Definitions

تعريفات

treatment علاج medical care to help you get better

wound جرح an injury that damage your skin

bacteria بكتيريا very small things that can make you ill

heal يلتئم - يشفى to get better

1 Look at these items. Match them to the problems.

انظر إلى الأشياء وصلها بالمشكلات المناسبة.



a. bandage



1- a sore throat

2- a cut knee

3- sunburn

4- a headache



b. sunscreen



c. honey and lemon



d. pills



2 When was the last time you needed an item from Exercise 1? What happened? Tell your partner.

متى آخر مرة احتجت فيها لأشياء من التمرين رقم ١؟ ماذا حدث؟ أخبر زميلك.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

I had sunburn so I

3 Read the first paragraph of an article about honey.
What two ways does the writer say we use honey in food?

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتان التي نستخدم بهما العسل في الطعام؟

استمع إلى النص



Do you like honey? **Perhaps**⁽¹⁾ you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment**⁽²⁾ for some **injuries**⁽³⁾ and illnesses.



In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds**⁽⁴⁾ by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. **Recently**⁽⁵⁾, scientists have tried to find out **exactly**⁽⁶⁾ why honey is so good for **healing**⁽⁷⁾ wounds and treating illnesses.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- ربما
- ٢- علاج
- ٣- إصابات
- ٤- جروح
- ٥- حديثاً- مؤخرًا
- ٦- بالضبط
- ٧- الشفاء
- ٨- يحلّون على
- ٩- بكتيريا
- ١٠- حرارة

Scientists know that some types of honey **contain**⁽⁸⁾ things that can help to kill **bacteria**⁽⁹⁾. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your **cupboard**⁽¹⁰⁾, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

4 Now read the full article. Check (✓) the facts that are mentioned:

الآن اقرأ الحوار كاملاً. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الحقائق المذكورة.

1. Bees make honey.
2. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth.
3. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years.
4. Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

☐
☐
☐
☐

5 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match them to their meaning

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط سميك في المقال. صل الكلمة بمعناها.

- A**
1. **treatment**
 2. **wound**
 3. **bacteria**
 4. **heal**

- B**
- a. to get better
 - b. very small things that can make you ill
 - c. medical care to help you get better
 - d. an injury that damages your skin



Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الفرق بين صوتي حرفي الـ (f) ، (v).
- ينطق حرف (f) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى ولكن بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- ينطق حرف (v) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى مع اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- وفيما يلي الكلمات التي تحتوي على الصوتين (f) ، (v).

استمع إلى الكلمات



F /f/ sound



frog ضفدع



scarf وشاح / كوفية



fan مروحة



fruit فاكهة



leaf ورقة شجر



ferry معبدة

V /v/ sound



vet طبيب بيطري



vegetables

خضراوات



television

تلفاز



van شاحنة مقلدة



view منظر طبيعي

life

حياة

safe

آمن

few

قليل

fine

جميل

fast

سريع

friend

صديق

leave

ينادر

live

يعيش

very

جداً

save

يحفظ / يوفر

lovely

جميل

1 Complete the words with 'f' or 'v'. Then listen and say:

أكمل الكلمات باستخدام الحرفين (F) أو (V) ثم استمع إلى النص.

استمع إلى النص.



1. I have a pet rog.



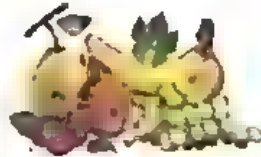
2. Hany is a et.



3. I have a very long
scar



4. Do you like
..... vegetables?



5. I really like ruit.



6. We like watching
tele ision .

2 Read, listen, and circle. Then listen again and repeat:

اقرأ واستمع ثم ضع دائرة. استمع مرة أخرى وردد النطق.

استمع إلى الكلمات.



- | | |
|----------|------|
| 1. van | fan |
| 2. leave | leaf |
| 3. life | live |
| 4. ferry | very |
| 5. few | view |
| 6. safe | save |

How to make the /f/ sound:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.

Blow, but **don't** use your voice!

How to make the /v/ sound:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.

Blow, but **do** use your voice!

3 Say these sentences. Say them again as fast as you can:

قل هذه الجمل. انطقهم بسرعة على قدر استطاعتك (لتتمكن من التفرقة بين F و V) .

1. Is there a fan in the very big van?
2. Leave the lovely leaf on the tree!
3. A few friends saw the very fine view.
4. The ferry is very fast!
5. It's safe to save your money here!

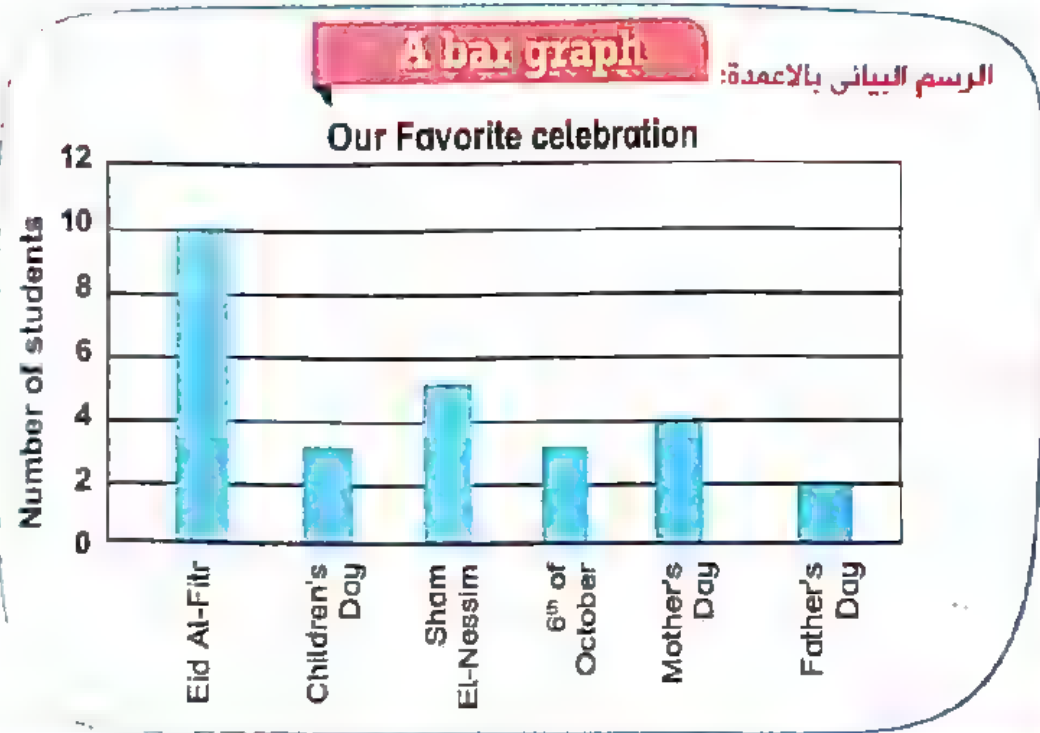




Math

Bar charts

يستخدم شريط الرسم البياني لعرض المعلومات على شكل أعمدة وفيما يلي عرض نموذج للرسم البياني باستخدام الأعمدة حيث يمثل احتفال الطلاب ببعض الأعياد:



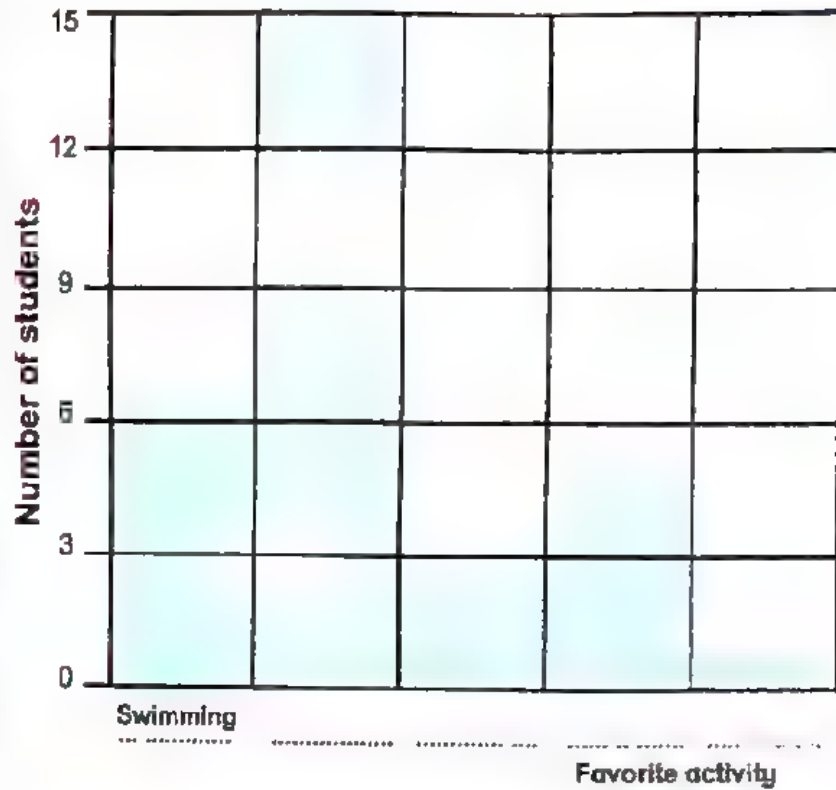
1 Look and read. Then label the bar chart: النظر واقرأ. اكمل الرسم البياني:

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

الرسم البياني هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. تم سؤال ٣٠ تلميذ الأسبوع الماضي عن النشاط المفضل لديهم في أوقات فراغهم للمحافظة على صحتهم. وفيما يلي نتيجة استطلاع الرأي. أي من الأنشطة المفضلة لديه أكبر عدد من التلاميذ؟



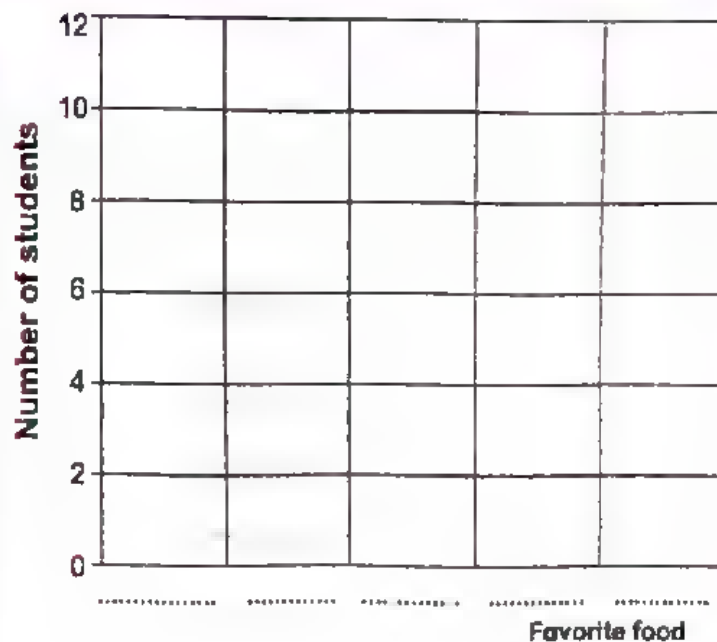
Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



2 Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

الآن استخدم هذا الجدول لتكمل الرسم البياني.

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع في كتابك

1. Doda likes very much.

☐ a milk

☐ b tea

☐ c honey

☐ d juice

2. Doda has honey with

☐ a nuts

☐ b lemon

☐ c cookies

☐ d oranges

3. Honey is good for wounds.

☐ a healing

☐ b cutting

☐ c making

☐ d using

4. Some types of honey can kill

☐ a insects

☐ b bees

☐ c bacteria

☐ d cuts



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

treatment - sunburn - illness - sweetest - cough

I like honey. It's the ① substance on Earth. Doctors used honey for thousand of years. They used it as a ② for some injuries and ③ If you have a ④ you can mix honey with milk to be better.



Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

I like eating honey for breakfast. We can put honey in some food like basbousa. It is also used as a treatment for some injunes When you cough, you can mix honey with milk. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a sore throat too. (نشرة - إدارة واستخدم)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea is about

☐ a basbousa

☐ b milk

☐ c honey

☐ d lemon

2. We used honey with if you have a sore throat.

☐ a treatment

☐ b lemon

☐ c milk

☐ d basbousa

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

4. How can we use the honey?



Help your child deal with such questions. تساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. week - I - cut - knee - last - my.

2. ferry - fast - very - is - The.

3. types - Some - of honey - bacteria - can - kill.

4. substance - is - on Earth - Honey - the sweetest.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

do bees make honey

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مخاطر آخر الوحدة

Honey

Guiding phrases

kill bacteria- help wound to heal



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



playing sports	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	أكل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافٍ
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن

presentation	عرض تقديمي
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
expert (s)	خبير / خبراء

Other words



كلمات أخرى

focus on	يركز على
scissors	مقص
insect bite cream	كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات
cleansing wipes	مناديل تنظيف مبللة
stay healthy	يحافظ على صحته

exercise	تمرين - تدريب
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
medical gloves	قفازات طبية
rubber band	رباط مطاطي
safety pin	دبوس مشبك

Conjugation of verbs

لصيغ الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

look after	يعتنى
exercise	يتمرن
need	يحتاج

Past ماضٍ

looked after
exercised
needed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

eat	يأكل
do	يفعل
keep	يحافظ
get	يحصل علي
spend	يقضي

Past ماضٍ

ate
did
kept
got
spent

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

① لاعطاء النصيحة نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:

② نستخدم (should) لاعطاء النصيحة بمعنى "ينبغي أن"، ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر،

مصدر الفعل (inf) + should + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- You **should** eat healthy foods.

③ وهناك صيغة أخرى لاعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "It's important to" من المهم

أن

مصدر الفعل (inf) + It's important to

- It's **important** to get enough sleep.

④ وهناك صيغة أخرى للنصيحة وهي:

من أفضل الطرق أن مصدر الفعل (inf) + One of the best ways to

- One of the **best ways** to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

1
Giving
advice
اعطاء
النصيحة

2
It's
important

3
One of the
best ways

Study the following

① My presentation today is about staying healthy.

العرض التقديمي اليوم عن كيف نحافظ على صحتك.

② It's really important to eat healthy foods.

من المهم أن تتناول أطعمة صحية.

③ You should do some exercise every day.

يجب عليك أن تؤدي بعض التمارين كل يوم.

④ It's very important to keep your body moving.

من المهم أن تبقى جسمك في حالة حركة.

⑤ Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

لعب الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

⑥ It's important to get enough sleep.

من المهم أن تنام بشكل كافٍ.

⑦ Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

يعتقد الخبراء بأنك تحتاج من ثمانية إلى تسعة ساعات نوم كل ليلة.

⑧ You should make time to focus on being happy.

يجب عليك أن تجعل وقتك سعيدًا.

⑨ Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

قضاء وقت مع الأسرة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للسعادة.

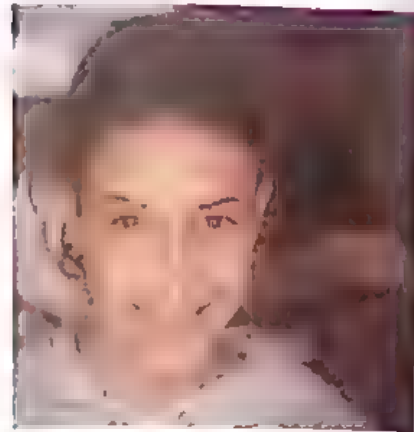
Unit 1

- 1 Read Asma's presentation. Check (✓) the things that she talks about:

اقرأ العرض التقديمي، وأسماء.. ضع علامة ✓ على الأشياء التي تحدثت عنها:

My list of healthy things to do

- playing sport
- eating vegetables
- reading books
- getting enough sleep
- visiting a doctor
- spending time with friends
- drinking plenty of water



استمع إلى النص.



My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is **really**⁽²⁾ important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet⁽¹⁾. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to **keep your body moving**⁽⁴⁾. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. **It's important to**⁽⁵⁾ get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition⁽³⁾ to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should **take** time to **be** happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a **great**⁽⁶⁾ way to do this.

Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمي

٢- بالفعل

٣- نظام غذائي متوازن

٤- يحافظ على حركة

الجسم

٥- من المهم أن

٦- بالإضافة إلى

٧- بشكل

٨- رائع

- 2 Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences:

اقرأ مقال أسماء مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل.

1. Asma says it's important to eat
2. Asma says that is a good way to exercise.
3. You should sleep between hours every night.
4. Spending time with your friends is good for your



3

Asma's class completed a table about staying healthy. Look at the table. Complete it for you:

أكمل فصل، أسماء، جدول عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك. انظر الى الجدول. أكمل الجدول الخاص بك.

Key: 🍏 🍏 🍏 = very good 🍏 🍏 = OK 🍏 = could do better

Eating healthy foods	🍏
Getting enough sleep	🍏 🍏
Drinking plenty of water	🍏 🍏 🍏
Playing sport	🍏 🍏 🍏
Spending time with friends	🍏 🍏

Eating healthy foods	
Getting enough sleep	
Drinking plenty of water	
Playing sport	
Spending time with friends	

4

Work in groups. Discuss and decide:

You are going on a school trip to the desert.

Your class is responsible for packing the first-aid kit. Look at the objects below. In groups, discuss which four items you want to take and why these are the most useful.

اعمل في مجموعات وناقش وقرر.

Take bandages in case someone cuts their knee.

- سوف تذهب في رحلة مدرسية في الصحراء. وفصلك مسئول عن تعبئة صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. انظر إلى الأشياء بالأسفل. ناقش في مجموعات أي من هذه الأشياء سوف توضع في صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. ولماذا هذه الأشياء مفيدة؟



bandages



sunscreen



scissors



Insect bite cream



cleansing wipes



medical gloves



rubber bands



safety pins



soap

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. What do you do to healthy?

- a sleep b stay c spend d make

2. It's important to have a diet.

- a balanced b irregular c unhealthy d impossible

3. We should take in case someone cuts their knee.

- a sunscreen b bandages c honey d injections

4. I need, I get sunburn.

- a scissors b soap c sunscreen d bandages

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الزطار:

time - plenty - exercise - hours - focus

It's very important to have a balanced diet. We should eat healthy foods. We should do some ① every day. We should sleep between eight or nine ② every night. We can spend ③ with our friends and family and make time to ④ on being happy, too.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. should - do - You - exercise - some.

.....

2. important - It's - enough - get - sleep - to .

.....

3. do - What - stay - do - healthy - you - to?

.....

4. sport - a good - Playing - is - to exercise - way.

.....



Help your child deal with such questions. تساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You should (**sleeps**) between 8 and 9 hours every night.
2. It's very important to (**kept**) your body moving.
3. You (**should to**) eat healthy foods.
4. (**Drank**) plenty of water every day.



ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

you should eat vegetables



اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مِجَابِ احْمَرِ الْوَحْدَةِ

Keeping Heat In

Guiding questions:

- 1- What do you do to stay healthy?
2- Who should you spend your time with?





Review

Illnesses الأمراض



backache
ألم بالظهر



cold
برد



sore throat
التهاب بالحلق



headache
صداع



earache
ألم بالأذن



toothache
ألم بالأسنان



cough
كحة



cut knee
جرح بالركبة



sunscreen
كريم واقى من الشمس



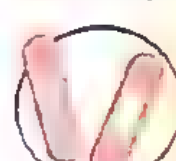
pills
أقراص دواء



honey and lemon
عسل وليمون



wound
جرح



bandage
ضمادة

unwell	مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة	family members	أفراد الأسرة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)	crowded	مزدحم
staff	هيئة الموظفين	injections	حقن
helpful	مفيد	corridor	طريقة - ممر
treatment	علاج	bacteria	بكتيريا
heal	يلتئم / يشفى	sunburn	حرق شمس
playing sports	لعب الرياضة	presentation	عرض تقديمي
eating vegetables	أكل الخضراوات	spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
reading books	قراءة الكتب	drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى	expert (s)	خبير / خبراء
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور		
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن		



Adjectives & opposites

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعي - قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني
moral	أخلاقي	immoral	غير أخلاقي
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممکن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم



Pronunciation

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/ :-

F /f/ sound



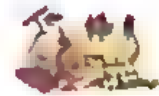
frog ضفدع



scarf وشاح/كوفية



fan مروحة



fruit فاكهة

V /v/ sound



vet طبيب بيطري



vegetables خضراوات



television تلفاز



van شاحنة مغلقة

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

hope	بأمل
use	يستخدم
turn	يحول - يلف
care	يعتني بـ
treat	يعالج
kill	يقتل
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى
damage	يتلف

hoped
used
turned
cared
treated
killed
healed
damaged

have/has	مصاب بـ - يملك
hurt	يؤلم
fall	يقع / يسقط
teach	يُدرس / يعلم
give	يعطي
become	يصبح
cut	يجرح
know	يعرف
get better	يتحسن

had
hurt
fell
taught
gave
became
cut
knew
got better

Verb to have

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب به كالآتي:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **have** } . اسم المرض +
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **has**

1

have / has
مصاب به

- I **have** a headache.

- He **has** a sore throat.

⊙ ولتفي تستخدم الصيغة التالية،

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **don't have** } . اسم العرض +
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **doesn't have**

- I **don't** have a headache.

- He **doesn't** have a toothache.

⊙ والسؤال فستستخدم الصيغة التالية،

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have** } ؟ اسم المرض +
Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + **have**

- Do you **have** a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

- Does he **have** a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

The prefixes (un - in - il - im)

- تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لإعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة، مثل:

polite → **impolite** , well → **unwell**
regular → **irregular** , legal → **illegal**

2

prefixes
البادئات

- My friend Gamal is **unwell**.

- This boy is shouting. He's **impolite**.

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 1

A toothache

- 1 I had a toothache yesterday. I told my father. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me some medicine. I took the medicine. I felt better. My father told me not to eat many sweets.
-

Lesson 3

Honey

- 2 Honey is very useful. I enjoy eating it for breakfast. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. It helps wound to heal more quickly. When you have a sore throat, you can have honey with lemon.
-

Lessons 4 & 5

Keeping healthy

- 3 It's important to keep healthy. We should eat healthy foods and have a balanced diet. We should drink plenty of water and do sports. Spending time with family and friends to be happy.
-

Activity Unit 8

A cold

- 4 I had a cold last week. I didn't feel better. I went to the doctor's. The doctor told me to stay home. The doctor gave me some pills. I took the pills. I felt better today. I stayed home for three days.
-



A- Listening

استمع واختر

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

1. I get up at o'clock. (six - seven - eight)
2. I have my with my parents. (lunch - breakfast - dinner)
3. I like (apples - honey - oranges)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات في الأسفل:

have - matter - doctor's - going

- A : Where are you
 B : I'm going to the
 A : What's the
 B : I a sore throat

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Yesterday Gamal went to the club. Gamal was very sad. His friend Samir hurt his ankle at football practice. His friend Yasser had an earache from swimming. They went to the hospital. Gamal was worried about my friends.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Gamal go yesterday?
2. Was Gamal happy at the club?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. His friend Samir hurt his at football practice (foot - arm - ankle)
4. His friend Yasser had an earache from (football - swimming - volleyball)
5. Gamal was worried about his (brothers - sisters - friends)



D- Vocabulary and Structures



Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you an earache?

☐ a have☐ b has☐ c had

2. I have a pet

☐ a lion☐ b frog☐ c elephant

3. What the matter, Wael?

☐ a am☐ b are☐ c is

4. Doctors work in a

☐ a school☐ b hospital☐ c shop

5. No, I have a sore throat.

☐ a does☐ b do☐ c don't

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. scarf - a very - I'm - have - long.2. stomach - Does - hurt - your?3. worried - my - I'm - friends - about.4. fell - in - over - the playground - He.5. hurt - his - Tarek - ankle - yesterday.



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

سمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. It's to eat healthy food.

- ☐ a irregular ☐ b possible ☐ c illegal ☐ d important

2. We should do some with friends.

- ☐ a exercise ☐ b food ☐ c sleep ☐ d homework

3. Sleeping for hours is good for health.

- ☐ a five ☐ b four ☐ c eight ☐ d six

4. Playing sports at is a good way to exercise.

- ☐ a school ☐ b street ☐ c home ☐ d hospital

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hisham visited his relative in hospital.

- ☐ a well ☐ b unwell ☐ c legal ☐ d regular

2. are very small things that can make you ill.

- ☐ a Bacteria ☐ b Doctors ☐ c Cupboards ☐ d Knees

3. I bought a long for my mother to wear.

- ☐ a fan ☐ b scarf ☐ c ferry ☐ d van

4. Drinking plenty of water keeps your body working

- ☐ a ill ☐ b well ☐ c will ☐ d bad

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

earache - care - stay - practice - ill

My brother Hany didn't go to school yesterday. He was ① He had an
② from swimming. He went to swimming ③ last Monday. My
father took Hany to the doctor, the doctor told Hany to ④ home and took
some medicine.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hazem. My uncle Hani is ill in the hospital in Giza. Our relatives visit him. There are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are friendly. The doctors examine patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit him every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. I come back home. I hope my uncle feel better.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "patients" means people
☐ a well ☐ b sick ☐ c happy ☐ d tall
- The hospital is in
☐ a Cairo ☐ b Aswan ☐ c Giza ☐ d Luxor

B- Answer the following questions:

- When is the hospital crowded?
- What do the doctors give patients?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- stomach - Does - your - hurt?
- worried - about - I'm - friends - my.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Walid's ankle (hurting).
- Do you (has) a backache?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- do you have a sore throat

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A cold

cold - medicine

مجاب آخر الوجد

My
society

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.

2. Listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.

3. Talk about ability now and in the past.

- يتحدث الطالب عن القدرة الآن وفي الماضي.

4. Learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق حرفي /w/ أو /v/

5. Write an email about an unusual animal.

- يكتب الطالب إيميل عن حيوان غير مأثوف (غريب).

6. Research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ومخطط معلومات بياني عن الحيوانات في بيئة ما.

LESSON

1

★ Wildlife



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



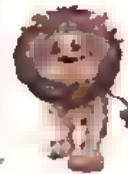
panda
الباندا



bat
خفاش



kangaroo
حيوان الكونغرو



lion
أسد



penguin
بطريق



Animals

الحيوانات



dolphin
دولفين



snail
حلزون



parrot
ببغاء

Adjectives

صفات

beautiful

جميل

colorful

زاهي / كثير الألوان

friendly

ودود / أليف

different

مختلف

amazing

مدهش

strong

قوي

wonderful

رائع

awesome

مذهل

sweet

جميل

cool

رائع / جذاب





wildlife park	حديقة الحياة البرية
shell	قوقعة
sleep upside down	ينام بالمقلوب
snow	جليد
ice	ثلج
fridge	ثلاجة
the rainforest	غابة مطيرة
a bit sad	حزين قليلاً

Australia	أستراليا
Africa	أفريقيا
China	الصين
the ocean	المحيط
bamboo	نبات الخيزران
pouch	جراب / كيس في أسفل بطن الكونغو
the dark	الظلام
rabbit	ارنب

Conjugation of verbs

الأمثلة

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

مضارع

jump	يقفز
live	يعيش
stay	يمكنث
want	يريد
enjoy	يستمتع
repeat	يردد

Past

ماضٍ

jumped
lived
stayed
wanted
enjoyed
repeated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

fly	يطير
swim	يعوم
sleep	ينام
hide	يختبئ
feed	يطعم
see	يري

Past

ماضٍ

flew
swam
slept
hid
fed
saw

Study the following

- 1 I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
- لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.
- 2 I went to the new wildlife park.
- ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة.
- 3 The kangaroos were interesting, too.
- كانت حيوانات الكونغو مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً.
- 4 When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.
- عندما يكونوا صغاراً، يجلسون داخل جراب أمهم.
- 5 We said some words for them to repeat.
- قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها.
- 6 They were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark.
- كانوا جميعاً مختبئون ولم أستطع رؤيتهم في الظلام.
- 7 Could you go near the lions?
- هل استطعت أن تذهب بالقرب من الأسود؟
- 8 They were in a special place inside.
- كانوا (البطريق) في مكان خاص بالداخل.

- 9 They can swim so well. - يمكنهم السباحة جيدًا.
- 10 I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. - لدي قوقعة ليس لدي أرجل أو أيدي.
- 11 I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. - أعيش في أستراليا. أقفز على رجلين.
- 12 I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. - أطيرو في الليل، أنام بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
- 13 I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. - أسبح في مجموعة مع عائلتي في المحيط.

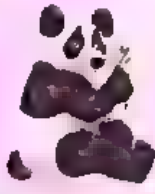
1 Listen and read. Then say the words: استمع واقرأ. ثم قل الكلمات:

1



kangaroo

2



panda

3



bat

4



lion

5



penguin

6



dolphin

7



snail

8



parrot

2 Read the clues. Write the correct animals:

اقرأ مفاتيح حل الألغاز. اكتب الحيوانات الصحيحة:

1. I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. snail
2. I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. kangaroo
3. I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. bat
4. I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. penguin
5. I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. parrot
6. I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong. lion
7. I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. dolphin
8. I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. panda



3 Read. Where did Ramez go yesterday?

قرأ أين ذهب رامز بالأمس؟

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص

Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

Ayman : Where did you go?

Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park⁽¹⁾ - it was awesome⁽²⁾!

Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch⁽³⁾ - it's so sweet!

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special⁽⁴⁾ place inside. It was cold, like a fridge⁽⁵⁾. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding⁽⁶⁾ and I couldn't see them in the dark!

Ayman : Oh well, it sounds⁽⁷⁾ amazing. I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today.

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة الحياة البرية

٢- رائع

٣- جراب الكنغر

٤- خاص

٥- ثلاجة

٦- مختبئون

٧- يبدو

4 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة.

project - sad - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife ^١ park with his family. He ^٢ it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ^٣ kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the ^٤ . He was a bit ^٥ because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a ^٦ on them at school.



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My uncle has a

- ☐ a parrot ☐ b rabbit ☐ c fish ☐ d snail

2. The parrot's name is

- ☐ a Tingo ☐ b Pingo ☐ c Mingo ☐ d Singo

3. The parrot can what we say.

- ☐ a walk ☐ b jump ☐ c take ☐ d repeat

4. The parrot has a beautiful

- ☐ a beak ☐ b head ☐ c mouth ☐ d nose



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. When are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.

- ☐ a lions ☐ b parrots ☐ c kangaroos ☐ d penguins

2. A has a shell and doesn't have legs or arms.

(العلوصة - إدارة بيما ٢٠٢٣)

- ☐ a snail ☐ b dolphin ☐ c bat ☐ d panda

3. The bat can sleep down on trees.

- ☐ a upside ☐ b inside ☐ c outside ☐ d above

4. The lives on ice. It can swim, but it can't fly.

(الموحيه - ٢٠٢٠ هيئة الساعات ٢٠٢٣)

- ☐ a snail ☐ b parrot ☐ c penguin ☐ d kangaroo



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

fed - pouch - shell - parrots - awesome

I'm doing a project at school about wildlife animals so, I went to a wildlife park with my family. We saw lots of animals like penguins, parrots and kangaroos. I watched the little Kangaroos sat inside their mom's ① My favorite birds were the ② They were ③ and could talk. I loved penguins and ④ them some fish.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. lives - in - The - China - panda.

2. see - birds - What - you - did?

3. upside - down - Bats - sleep - can.

جزء - إدارة أوسيم ٢٣

4. yesterday - go - Ramez - Where - did?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (have) a wonderful day out yesterday.

2. I can swim, but I (can) fly.

3. I've got to (feeding) my rabbit now.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

i couldn't see bats in the dark

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My trip to a wildlife park

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- What did you see?

2- How did you go there?

What could you do?

Part I

Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



quickly	بسرعة	busy	مشغول
very fast	بسرعة جدًا	German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	French	اللغة الفرنسية
amazed	متدهش	France	فرنسا
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية		

Conjugation of verbs

المضارع والمضارع

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
speak	يتحدث	spoke		take	يأخذ	took	
fly	يطير	flew		ride	يركب	rode	
run	يجري	ran		read	يقرأ	read	
drive	يقود	drove		swim	يعوم	swam	



Study the following

1 Birds can fly.

- تستطيع الطيور أن تطير.

2 Lions can run very fast.

- تستطيع الأسود الجري بسرعة جدًا.

3 Bats can sleep upside down on trees.

- تنام الخفافيش بالمقلوب على الأشجار.

4 Snails can live in shells.

- تعيش الحلزونات في قواقع.

Unit 9 My favorite animal

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

1

للتعبير عن:
الاستطاعة فعل
شيء في الحاضر
نستخدم:

فعل في المصدر + inf + يستطيع أن + فاعل

- Birds **can** fly.

- I **can** play basketball.

فعل في المصدر + inf + لا يستطيع أن + فاعل

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.

- I **can't** speak Italian.

? فعل في المصدر + inf + فاعل + Can

- **Can** you play tennis?

⊙ لاحظ لا تضع (to) بعد can / can't

⊙ في الاثبات: فعل في المصدر + could + فاعل

- I **could** run fast last year.

⊙ في النفي: فعل في المصدر + couldn't + فاعل

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

⊙ في السؤال: ? فعل في المصدر + inf + فاعل + Could

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

⊙ لاحظ لا تضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

⊙ ويمكن استخدام when مع could / couldn't كما يلي:

فعل في المصدر + inf + { could / couldn't } + فاعل + , ماضي بسيط + فاعل + When
عندما

- **When** I lived in France, I **could** speak French.

- OR: I **could** speak French **when** I lived in France.

⊙ لاحظ استخدام comma (,) إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ When.

? الماضي البسيط + فاعل + when + فعل في المصدر + inf + فاعل + Could

- **Could** you ride a bike when you **were** three?

1. Read and match:

اقرأ وصل.

1. birds
2. lions
3. snails
4. bats

- a. can live in shells
- b. can sleep upside down on trees
- c. can fly
- d. can run very fast

2 Write can or can't:

اكتب يستطيع أو لا يستطيع :

1. Bats **can** fly very fast.
2. Snails **can't** move quickly.
3. Parrots **can** fly.
4. Pandas **can't** drive a car.

3 Write could or couldn't:

اكتب استطاع أو لم يستطع :

1. When I was two, I **couldn't** use a computer.
2. I **could** read when I was one.
3. My sister **could** play chess when she was five, but she **couldn't** when she was eight.
4. My cousin **could** run when he was a baby.
5. I **could** swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. **Could** you speak English when you were five?

4 Circle the correct word:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة :

1. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I **can**.

☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c could

2. Last year, he **could** run very quickly, but now he can.

☐ a can't ☐ b could ☐ c couldn't

3. **Could** you play the piano when you were a child?

☐ a Can ☐ b Could ☐ c Couldn't

4. Sorry, I **can't** help you with your homework. I'm busy.

☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c could



The travelers and the tree

Part 2



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



مكسرات



exhausted
متعب (متعب جدًا)



branch of a tree
فرع شجرة



trunk of a tree
جذع شجرة

wide

واسع - عريض

shade

ظل

famous

مشهور

traders

تجار

shelter

مأوى

meeting point

مكان للتجمع (للقاء)

rest

بسريح / راحة

breeze

نسيم (رياح خفيفة)

comfortable

مريح

useless

عديم الفائدة

save

يُفد

ungrateful

ناكر الجميل

angry

غاضب

unkind

غير عطف

فهم النص

a breeze نسيم a little wind

useless عديم الفائدة we can't use it

ungrateful ناكر الجميل don't thank others for doing something good

comfortable مريح it's nice to sit on or wear

a meeting point somewhere where people meet
نقطة اللقاء / تجمع



Study the following

1 Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land.

- كان يوجد شجرة كبيرة الحجم والعمر في يوم حار وجاف.

2 Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches.

- كان جذعها (الشجرة) عريض جدًا ولديها الكثير من الفروع الخضراء.

3 It was a meeting point for traders.

- كانت نقطة (مكان) لقاء للتجار.

4 They enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. - استمتعوا بالظل والتهبم الرائع.

5 As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep. - بمجرد أن شعروا بالتعب الشديد، خلدوا إلى النوم في الحال.

6 There are no nuts or fruit on its branches. - لا يوجد مكسرات أو فواكهة في فروعها.

7 You came to me feeling hot and tired. - أتيت إلى واءت تشعر بالحر والارهاق.

8 I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. - أعطيتك مكان مريح ورائع للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك.

9 The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry. - نظر المسافرون حولهم وراوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالندم.

10 It's important to give value to the small things in our lives. - من المهم أن نعطي قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة في حياتنا.

1 Match the words to the photos. Check in a dictionary:

صل الكلمات بالصورة. تأكد من القاموس.

a



c



1 trunk of a tree

2 branch of a tree

3 nuts

4 exhausted

b



d



2 Read and listen to a fable by Aesop. Why was the tree angry?

اقرأ واستمع إلى أسطورة خرافية كتبها "إيسوب". لماذا كانت الشجرة غاضبة؟

استمع إلى النص:



Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green **branches**⁽¹⁾. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave **shelter**⁽²⁾ and **rest**⁽³⁾ to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

Arabic Meaning

١- أغصان

٢- مأوى

٣- راحة

٤- منطقة

٥- مكان للتجمع

٦- ظل

٧- نسيم

٨- منهك

٩- استيقظ

١٠- ولا واحد منهم

١١- عديم الفائدة

١٢- مكسرات

١٣- ناكز الجميل

١٤- مريح

١٥- من المحتمل

١٦- انقذ

١٧- صحيح

It was near four towns and many villages in its **area**⁽⁴⁾ and was a **meeting point**⁽⁵⁾ for traders.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some **shade**⁽⁶⁾." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool **breeze**⁽⁷⁾. As they were **exhausted**⁽⁸⁾, they soon fell asleep.

When they **woke up**⁽⁹⁾, one of the travelers felt hungry. **Neither of them**⁽¹⁰⁾ had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is **useless**⁽¹¹⁾," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no **nuts**⁽¹²⁾ or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so **ungrateful**⁽¹³⁾?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, **comfortable**⁽¹⁴⁾ place to sleep and I **probably**⁽¹⁵⁾ **saved**⁽¹⁶⁾ your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here. "The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was **correct**⁽¹⁷⁾ and felt very sorry.

3 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة في كراسك.

1. The tree was in a field with many other trees.

F

2. It was a cool, rainy day.

3. The travelers were tired

4. The travelers were thirsty.

5. Both the travelers were ungrateful to the tree.

6. In the end the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree.

4 Look at the underlined words in the story. Circle the correct definition: انظر إلى الكلمات التي تحتها خط في القصة. وضع دائرة حول التعريف الصحيح:

1. A breeze is a little wind / lake.
2. When something is useless, we can / can't use it.
3. When someone is ungrateful, they thank / don't thank others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's nice / not nice to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people leave / meet.

5 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. اعمل في ثنائيات. اجب عن الأسئلة:

1. What do you think the moral of the story is?

في رأيك ما الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة؟

- ☐ a It's important to plant lots of trees.
- ☐ b It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.
- ☐ c It's important to take food when you travel.

2. What do you think the travelers said to the tree at the end?

في رأيك ماذا قال المسافرون للشجرة في النهاية؟

6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. Use the photos below to help you with your answers:

اعمل في ثنائيات. أجب عن الأسئلة. استخدم الصور بالأسفل لتساعدك في إجابتك.

1. Why are trees important for humans?

2. Why are trees important for animals?

3. Why is it important to plant trees?



Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

امشي الاستماع



- 1 Hisham could at five.
☐ a talk ☐ b sleep ☐ c move ☐ d run
- 2 Nabil is two years than Hisham.
☐ a bigger ☐ b older ☐ c younger ☐ d longer
- 3 Hisham can use a computer and play
☐ a tennis ☐ b chess ☐ c games ☐ d football
- 4 Now, Nabil can and sing.
☐ a swim ☐ b play ☐ c read ☐ d speak

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A breeze is a little
☐ a rain ☐ b wind ☐ c lake ☐ d light
- 2 A meeting is somewhere where people meet.
☐ a line ☐ b short ☐ c point ☐ d time
- 3 He was so he fell asleep.
☐ a exhausted ☐ b ungrateful ☐ c unlucky ☐ d impossible
- 4 Bats fly very fast at night.
☐ a couldn't ☐ b can't ☐ c can ☐ d shouldn't

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Nadia. I have two brothers and a sister. When we were children, we could do many things. My brothers Adel and Walid could play football. I could play the piano.

My sister, Sahar, could run. Walid couldn't do his homework. I helped him. My mother could cook delicious food, but we couldn't cook any food. Now we grow up and we can cook all kinds of food and help our mother.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Nadia has
☐ a no sisters ☐ b a sister ☐ c three sisters ☐ d two sisters



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. couldn't do homework.

a Nadia

b Walid

c Adel

d Soha

B. Answer the following questions

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence

4. Could Nadia play the piano?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. rested - under - **They** - tree - the

2. couldn't - speak - **We** - German. .

3. ungrateful - be - **How** - so - can - you?

4. trees - for - **Why** - humans - are - important?

ترتيب الكلمات

Read and write the correct form of the words, between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When I was four, I (**can't**) use a computer

2. Last year, I (**can**) play tennis.

3. Now, Hoda (**could**) run very quickly.

4. (**Can**) you speak when you were ten months?

5. Nabil couldn't (**speaks**) Italian.

6. I (**could to**) help my little sister with her homework

Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للنص

i couldn't take the bus

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقالة، بثلاثين (30) كلمة عن

مما كان بإمكانك فعله

Things you could do when you were little

Guiding phrases

talk with my parents - run very fast

Lesson

3

★ This is so interesting



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



famous	مشهور
excellent	ممتاز
professional	محترف
clear	واضح

Arsenal	ارسنال (نادى انجليزى)
relax	يسترخي
ring	يرن

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

① نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمة أو الفعل لتكوين الاسم.

الكلمة Word	الاسم Noun
teach	يدرس teacher مدرس
read	يقرا reader قارئ
farm	مزرعة farmer فلاح
football	كرة القدم footballer لاعب كرة قدم
travel	يسافر traveler مسافر
climb	يتسلق climber متسلق

1
Suffix
اللاحقة (-er)

- ② نضيف (ing) أو (ed) إلى نهاية الفعل لتكوين الصفة.
- ③ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحدف ونضيف (ing) أو (ed).
- ④ لاحظ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed) توصف الشئ أو الشخص الذي يتأثر أو يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف الشئ أو الشخص الذي يسبب الصفة.

2
Adjectives
end with
(ing) - (ed)
صفات تنتهي بـ
(ing) أو بـ (ed)

Verbs أفعال	Adjectives with (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed)	Adjectives with (ing) صفات تنتهي بـ (ing)
annoy	يزعج annoyed مزعج	annoying مزعج
amaze	يندهش amazed مندهش	amazing مذهش
interest	يهتم interested مهتم	interesting شيق
tire	يتعب tired متعب	tiring متعب
surprise	يندهش surprised مندهش	surprising مفاجئ

1 Listen and repeat the words: استمع وردد الكلمات

2 Listen again and write the (er) words: استمع مرة أخرى واكتب الكلمات بـ (er)

استمع إلى الأصوات الأخرى



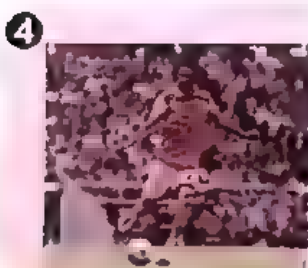
t _ _ _ _ _



r _ _ _ _ _



c _ _ _ _ _



f _ _ _ _ _



f _ _ _ _ _



t _ _ _ _ _

3 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 2:

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين رقم ٢:

1. My grandfather was a great He traveled to many great places around the world.
2. A famous Egyptian in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
3. My favorite is Miss Salwa. She's very friendly and kind in the classroom.
4. My cousin is a very good He reads about 20 books a year.



Unit 9

4 Add (-ed) and (-ing) to the verbs to make adjectives:

أضف (ed) أو (ing) للأفعال لتكوين الصفات.

1. annoy → **annoyed** , **annoying**

2. amaze → _____

3. interest → _____

4. tire → _____

5. surprise → _____

5 Complete the crossword with words from Exercises 1 - 4

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات من التمارين (1 - 4).

Across:

1. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent _____ . He plants the best tomatoes in town!

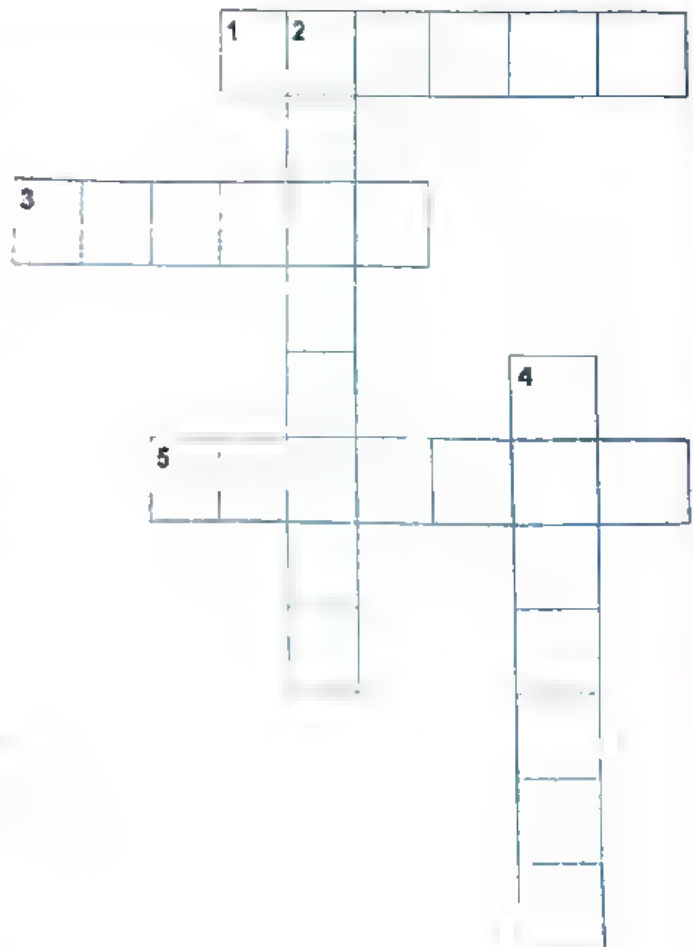
3. That long walk was very _____ . I can't wait to get home and relax!

5. My uncle's a professional _____ . He goes up some very high mountains.

Down:

2. I find my phone really _____ when it rings while I'm sleeping.

4. Mr Eissa is a great _____ . He makes everything clear in our lessons.





Pronunciation

استمع إلى الكلمات،



- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Ww) / (Vv) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف /Ww/ نعمل دائرة ضيقة بالشفتين.



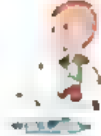
winter

الشتاء



wheel

عجلة (إطار سيارة)



wet

مبلل



whale

حوت



watermelon

بطيخة



west

الغرب



water

ماء



Wednesday

الأربعاء

/Vv/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف (Vv) تضغط بالأسنان العليا على الجزء السفلي للشفة.



vet

طبيب بيطري



violin

آلة الكمان



volcano

بركان



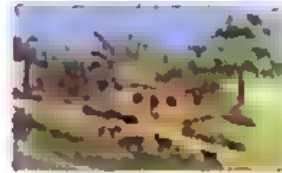
vase

زهيرية



vest

سترة (مليري)



village

قرية

1 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد،

استمع إلى الكلمات آخر الكتاب،

- | | | | | | |
|---------|------|-----------|---------|----------|--------|
| 1. west | vest | 2. wheel | whole | 3. vase | vest |
| 4. vet | wet | 5. violin | volcano | 6. water | winter |

Unit 9 My vocabulary

2 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات:

استمع إلى الكلمات واكتبها

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.

3 Listen and write. Then listen again and check:

استمع واكتب. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص واكتب الكلمات

Last ①... I decided⁽¹⁾ to travel ②... in my boat wearing my ③... I was looking for a ④... but I had some problems⁽²⁾. I met some ⑤... and they turned over⁽³⁾ my boat. I had to sit on my ⑥... to stay afloat⁽⁴⁾! I ate ⑦... to stay healthy and I came to shore⁽⁵⁾. I didn't find the ⑧..., but I met some vets and they took me home to my ⑨...!



Arabic Meaning

- ١- قرر
- ٢- مشكلات
- ٣- قلبوا
- ٤- يبقى عائمًا
- ٥- الشاطئ

4 Listen and repeat the tongue twister. Can you say it quickly:

استمع وردد الكلمات أو الجمل التي تسبب تنافر أو تلثم اللسان. هل تستطيع أن تقولها بسرعة؟

- يقصد به (tongue twister) تنافر أو تلثم اللسان من أجل توضيح مدى السرعة التي يمكنك بها التحدث بمجموعة من الكلمات لها نفس الحروف والتي يصعب نطقها معًا في جملة واحدة.



Waleed made vases on very wet wheels for vets.

صنع وليد زهريرات على عجلات مبللة للأطباء البيطريين.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My brother is wearing a blue

- a** vest **b** west **c** wheel **d** vase

2. My favorite season is the

- a** water **b** winter **c** volcano **d** watermelon

3. My uncle is a professional He goes up some very high mountains.

- a** climbing **b** climber **c** climbed **d** climbs

4. The history of Egypt is so

- a** interested **b** interesting **c** interest **d** interests

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wore - van - village - vet - wet

My uncle is a vet. He lives in a ① Yesterday, he woke up early and ② his vest. He saw a ③ cat in the street. He took it and put it in his ④ He gave it water and food. The cat was very happy.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الاسئلة:

My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather could climb high

- a** places **b** walls **c** mountains **d** trees

2. My grandfather read about books every year.

- a** thirteen **b** thirty **c** sixty **d** three

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Unit 9 My favorite animal

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the grandfather go to the library?

4. Where did the grandfather travel?

C. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. got - home - relax - I - to.

2. four - The - has - wheels - car.

3. interested - I'm - history - very - in.

4. professional - Mu - climber - is - uncle - a.

5. kind - your - friendly - teacher - Is - and?

6. makes - clear - Who - everything - lessons - in?

D. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This school trip was very ... (tired).

2. I'm too ... (interest) in playing chess.

3. The movie I saw yesterday was ... (amaze).

4. History is so ... (interested).

E. Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاثني عشر.

- do you like eating watermelons



Key Words

استمع إلى المفردات



unusual animal (حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)	nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كتابة
dugong (الأطوم (بقر البحر)	sea cow	بقرة البحر
(حيوان بحري كبير الحجم من فصيلة الثدييات)	sea bed	قاع البحر
	infographic	مخطط معلومات يائي



email	بريد إلكتروني	bison	ثور أمريكي
cute	جميل	warm	دافئ
basketball	كرة السلة	cool	بارد
note	ملاحظة	percent	نسبة مئوية
habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات	surface	سطح
polar	قطبي	eagle	طائر العقاب
grassland	أرض عشية	wolf	ذئب

Writing an email

تذكر أن:

1. عند كتابة الإيميل تبدأ بـ: اسم المرسل + From
ثم تكتب: اسم المرسل إليه + To
2. تبدأ الإيميل بكلمات (عزيزي Dear) أو (أهلاً Hi) ثم اسم المرسل إليه.
3. ثم تقول لماذا تكتب الإيميل باستخدام عبارات مثل:
 - Just a quick note مجرد ملحوظة سريعة
 - Thanks for writing to me. شكرًا للكتابة لي.
4. أعطي فكرة عن الموضوع ثم توسع في شرحه.
5. عندما تكتب لصديقك استخدم لغة غير رسمية مثل:
 - awesome / cool. / I'm / كلمات مثل:
 - How's life? / How are things? عبارات مثل:
6. اختتم الإيميل بعبارات مثل:
 - Write soon. أكتب لي في أقرب وقت.
 - Hope to hear from you soon. أتمنى أن أعرف أخبارك قريباً.
 - See you soon. أراك قريباً.
 - All the best. كل الأمنيات الطيبة.
 - Bye for now. إلى اللقاء.
7. ثم تكتب اسمك.



Study the following

- 1 I play on a team once a week. - اللعب في الفريق مرة في الأسبوع.
- 2 My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. - الأطوم حيواني المفضل وغير المألوف في مصر.
- 3 It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute. - لديه وجه أليف ومحبوب وهو حيوان رائع جداً.
- 4 Its nickname is the sea cow. - اسم الشهرة هو بقرة البحر.
- 5 It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day. - يقضي ساعات طويلة يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

1 Read Amir's email. What's his favorite unusual animal?

اقرأ إيميل أمير. ما الحيوان غير المألوف لديه؟

استمع إلى النص



← →
⌵ ⌶ ✕

From: Amir

To: Tamer

Subject: Unusual animals

6 New Message


Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week. This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir



dugong

🔍 🗑️ 📧 📎 🔄 🛑
🗑️ | ▾

2 Read again and answer True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب بـ (True) أو (False).

1. Tamer called Amir and they talked about sports.

2. Amir doesn't like sports.

3. Amir wants to talk about wildlife.

4. He sends a photo to Tamer.

5. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows.

6. He wants Tamer to write back.

3 Complete the email phrases:

أكمل عبارات الإيميل.

things - note - best - soon

1. See you _____!

2. How are _____?

3. Just a quick _____

4. All the _____

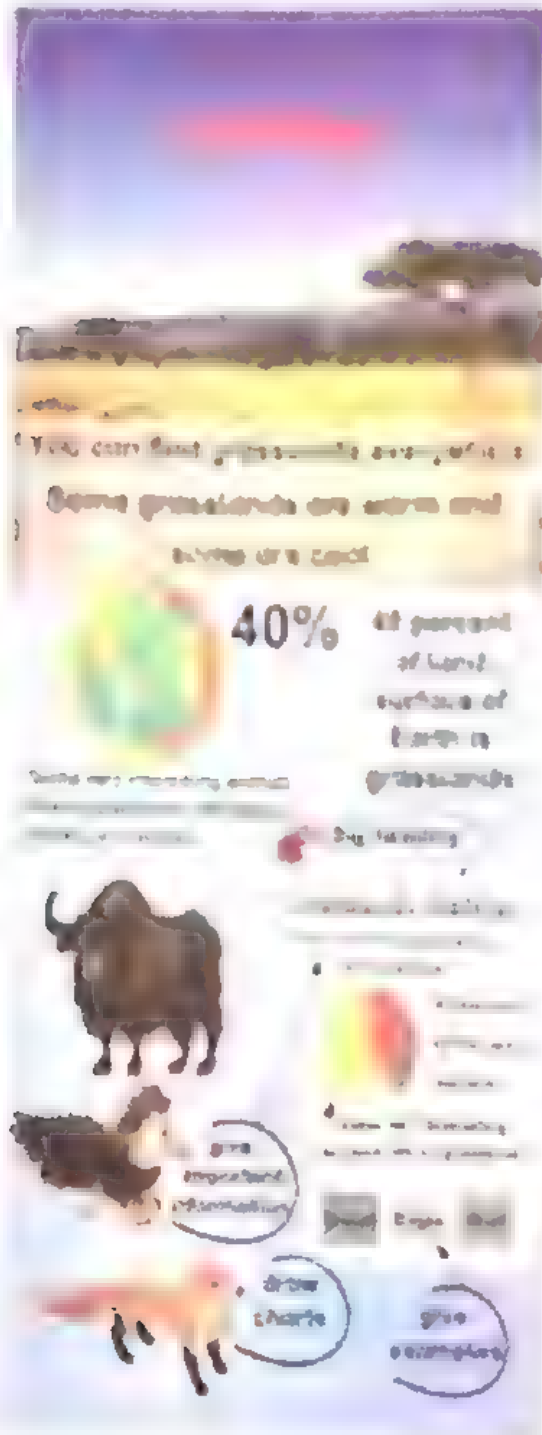


Work in pairs. Discuss and decide

You are going to make an infographic about the different types of land. You have to use the information in the infographic. Here are some ideas.

Choose the type of land you want to focus on. You can use the information in the infographic to help you.

- Desert
- Forest
- Grassland
- Mountain





المشروع: تطوير نظام إدارة الموارد البشرية (HRM) باستخدام Python و Django.



- animals

2

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. email - your - Thanks - for.
2. you - photo - Can - the - see?
.....
3. nickname - the sea - Its - cow - is.
.....
4. eats - the sea - The dugong - bed - grass - from.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This week, we're _____ (talk) about unusual animals.
2. The dugong has got a lovely _____ (friend) face.
3. I _____ (playing) on a team once a week.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

does Amir like sports _____

Help your child deal with such questions. - **ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.**





Review

Animals الحيوانات



kangaroo حيوان الكنغر



panda الباندا



bat خفاش



lion أسد



penguin بطريق



dolphin دولفين



snail حلزون



parrot ببغاء



busy	مشغول
German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج
nuts	مكسرات
exhausted	منهك (متعب جدًا)
branch of a tree	فرع شجرة
trunk of a tree	جذع الشجرة
wide	واسع - عريض
famous	مشهور
shelter	مأوى
rest	يستريح
comfortable	مريح

relax	يسترخي
save	يقصد
shade	ظل
traders	تجار
meeting point	مكان للتجمع
breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيف)
useless	بلا فائدة
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
dugong	الأطوم
sea cow	بقرة البحر
nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
sea bed	قاع البحر
unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)





Pronunciation

Ww

Vv

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها أحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Nw/



winter

الشتاء



wheel

عجلة (أطراف سيارة)



whale

حوت



watermelon

بعلبحة

/Nv/



vet

طبيب بيطري



violin

آلة الكمان



volcano

بركان



vase

زهريّة

Language Focus

ملاحظات لغوية

فعل في المصدر + يستطيع أن + can + فاعل

- Birds **can** fly.

في النفي نستخدم،

فعل في المصدر + لا يستطيع أن + can't + فاعل

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.

في السؤال نستخدم، **Can + فاعل + Inf** ؟

- **Can** you play tennis?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

فعل في المصدر + could + فاعل، في الاثبات،

- I **could** run fast last year.

فعل في المصدر + couldn't + فاعل، في النفي،

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

في السؤال، **Could + فاعل + Inf** ؟

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

فعل في المصدر + استطاع + could + فاعل + جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + عندما When
لم يستطع + couldn't

- When I **was** five, I **could** speak English.

- When she **was** a baby, she **couldn't** walk.

1

للتعبير عن:
استطاعة فعل
شيء في الحاضر
نستخدم،

2

للتعبير عن:
استطاعة فعل
شيء في الماضي
نستخدم،

Lesson 1

My trip to a wildlife park

- 1 Yesterday, I went to the wildlife park. I went with my family in my father's car. The animals were amazing. I saw the little kangaroos could sit inside their mom's pouch. There were beautiful parrots. They could talk and say some words.

Lesson 2

Things you could do when you were little

- 2 When I was little, I could talk with my parents. I could play with my toys. I couldn't walk. When I was six, I could run very fast. My mother helped me to do a lot of things.

Activity 3 - Unit 3

The bat

- 3 Bats fly at night. They are all hiding. We can't see them in the dark. They sleep upside down on trees. They are black. I don't like them. But my teacher wants me to do a project about them.

A- Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

1. I like (animals - birds - insects)
2. The parrot can (swim - talk - read)
3. I say some words for it to (sing - think - repeat)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات في الأسفل:

see - animals - go - park

- A : Where did you last weekend?
- B : I went to the new wildlife
- A : What did you ?
- B : I saw some unusual

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What are we talking about this week?

.....

2. Where's the unusual animal from?

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



B - Choose the correct answer:

3. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the
(elephant - dugong -
4. Its nickname is the sea
(fish - whale -
5. It spends many hours eating from the sea bed every day.
(meat - rice -

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's important to lots of trees.
a sleep b meet c plant
2. A can jump on two legs.
a snake b snail c kangaroo
3. My favorite is Miss Fatma. She is kind in the classroom.
a vet b doctor c teacher
4. Sorry, I help you with your homework. I'm busy.
a can b can't c could
5. I speak French when I lived in France.
a can b can't c could

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

جد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. live - Snails - shells - can - in.
.....
2. is - a little - A breeze - wind.
.....
3. plant - Is - trees - it - important - to?
.....
4. you - Could - use - computer - a?
.....
5. see - in - I - bats - the dark - couldn't.
.....



Activity

on Unit

9

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The penguin lives in the
☐ a park ☐ b ocean ☐ c forest ☐ d wildlife
2. The penguin is a animal.
☐ a lazy ☐ b slow ☐ c friendly ☐ d useless
3. The penguin swims in a with his family.
☐ a school ☐ b group ☐ c team ☐ d class
4. The teacher was very happy about the project.
☐ a math ☐ b Arabic ☐ c English ☐ d science

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Nabil is , he doesn't thank others for doing something good.
☐ a bored ☐ b ungrateful ☐ c useless ☐ d comfortable
2. A lives in China and eats bamboo.
☐ a parrot ☐ b panda ☐ c penguin ☐ d bat
3. My sister is good at playing the
☐ a vest ☐ b violin ☐ c volcano ☐ d vase
4. Mr Saleh travels around the world. He's a great
☐ a traveling ☐ b traveled ☐ c traveler ☐ d travels

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

امرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

nickname - talks - unusual - spends - cute

I'm doing research about the dugong. It's an ① sea animal. It's very
 ② Its ③ is the sea cow. It ④ many hours eating
 grass from the sea bed every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, we had a science lesson about the wildlife. It was an awesome lesson. Then, my teacher Miss Rasha asked us to make an infographic about the forest habitat. All the class collected some ideas about the life and animals in the forest. We drew some pictures of interesting animals like kangaroos, parrots and bats. My favorites were the parrots. They are so wonderful. They can talk and repeat words. I want to keep a parrot at home. That sounds amazing.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about the habitat.

a desert

b forest

c grassland

d ocean

2. Miss Rasha asked us to make a/an about the forest.

a lesson

b project

c infographic

d email

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What can parrots do?

4. How was the science lesson?

C. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. feed - my - I've - rabbit - got - to,

2. swim - Could - year - Hany - last?

D. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We (Can) use a computer last year.

2. My friend asked me a (surprised) question.

E. Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

the dolphin swims in the ocean

F. Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The bat

Guiding questions

1- When do bats fly?

2- How do bats sleep?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

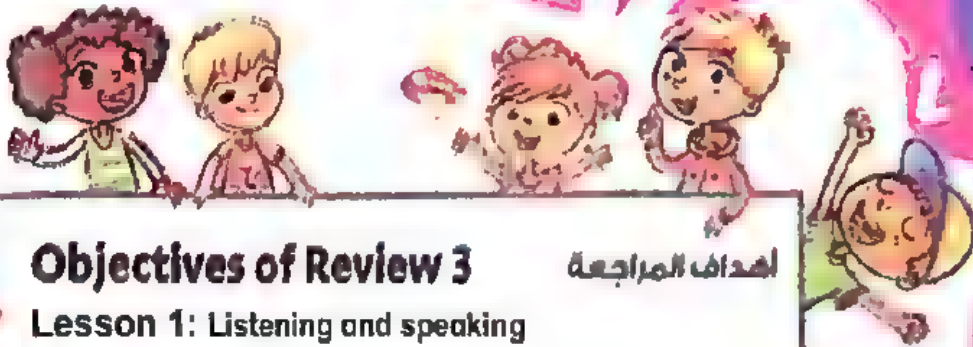
.....

.....

.....

Review

3



Objectives of Review 3

اهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد النحوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٧ إلى ٩.

- To evaluate progress in Units 7 - 9.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب في استيعاب الوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.



Lesson

1

Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Listen and point:

استمع وأشر

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى المفردات

1- clock

2- cough

3- bat

4- closet

5- dolphin

6- kangaroo

7- headache

8- balcony

9- lion

10- shoulder

11- dugong

12- panda

14- oven

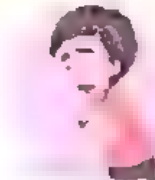
15- toothache

16- parrot

Start



1- clock



2- _____



3- _____



4- _____



5- _____



10- _____



9- _____



8- _____



7- _____



6- _____



11- _____



12- _____



13- _____



14- _____



15- _____

Finish

2 Look and write:

أنظر واكتب (كلمات):

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

3 Play and say:

إلعب وقل:

What's
number 12?It's a panda.
What's
number 15?

4 Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في القائمة:

unhappy - unsafe - uncomfortable - unfriendly

1. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch - it was really **uncomfortable**.
2. She's very _____ because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was _____, but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. That electrical wire looks very _____ - don't touch it!

5 Complete the text about Injy's day in Alexandria with the verbs in the regular and irregular past simple form:

أكمل النص عن يوم إنجي في الإسكندرية باستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن الماضي البسيط:

I **had** (have) a lovely day yesterday.I **traveled** (travel) to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We **went** (go) by train. I love trains!When we **arrived** (arrive), we **rushed** (rush) straight to my aunt's house.She **gave** (give) us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt **took** (take)us to the Corniche. The sea **was** (be) really beautiful.

6 Complete the sentences about the rest of Injy's day in Exercise 5. Check (✓) the sentences with irregular verbs:

أكمل النص عن باقي يوم إنجي في التمرين 5. ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل التي تحتوي على أفعال غير منتظمة:

1- We **drank** (drink) juice at a café in the square. (✓)2- Then we **drove** (drive) to the market and **bought** (buy) a present for a friend. ()3- We **had** (have) a great time. ()4- I nearly **missed** (miss) the train home! ()5- I **slept** (sleep) all the way back home. ()

Lesson

2

Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Label the photos with the words in the box:

ضع الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة تحت الصورة الخاصة بها.

backache - cough - earache - headache - sore throat - toothache

1



headache

2



3



4



5



6



2 Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs:

رتب المحادثة. استمع وتأكد وكرر ثم قم بالادوار في ثنائيات.

نصائح للاستماع الجيد



Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

(1)

Kareem: Thank you, nurse.

()

Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a bat?

()

Kareem: I have an earache.

()

Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go

home. I'll telephone your mom.

()

Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.

()



3 Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures:

استمع ثم اكتب الكلمات التي تسمعها. ثم صل الكلمات بالصورة.



1- panda



2- p



3- d



4- r



5- s



6- w

4 Complete the sentences with could or couldn't:

أكمل النص باستخدام could أو couldn't

- 1 I couldn't speak when I was one month old.
- 2 I could ride a bike when I was a baby.
- 3 Waleed could read when he was 6. He loves reading!
- 4 Amira couldn't write until she went to school.
- 5 Tamer's brother could drive at 20 - he passed his driving test at 18.
- 6 I couldn't play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.

5 Complete the crossword with the -er words:

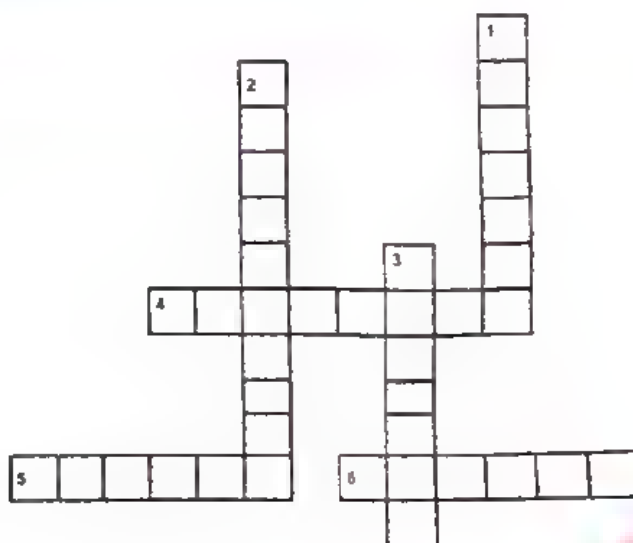
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة باستخدام كلمات تنتهي بـ -er

Down

1. Someone who helps you in the classroom.
2. Someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
3. Someone who goes up mountains using a rope.

Across

4. Someone who travels to a lot of places.
5. Someone who grows food for us.
6. Someone who reads a lot.



on Units
(7.8 & 9)

Activity



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Fatma lives in
☐ a Cairo ☐ b Aswan ☐ c Giza ☐ d Luxor
2. Fatma's parents moved to a apartment.
☐ a smaller ☐ b closer ☐ c longer ☐ d wider
3. There are four in the new apartment.
☐ a rooms ☐ b beds ☐ c cushions ☐ d armchairs
4. They have in the living room.
☐ a closet ☐ b television ☐ c balcony ☐ d gift

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I had a/an and I can't hear well.
☐ a backache ☐ b headache ☐ c toothache ☐ d earache
2. That long road is very, I can't walk.
☐ a tiring ☐ b comfortable ☐ c interesting ☐ d amazing
3. Ancient Egyptians used to make bricks.
☐ a papyrus ☐ b mats ☐ c mud ☐ d wood
4. When we have a headache, we take
☐ a sunscreen ☐ b pills ☐ c bandages ☐ d bacteria

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

fields - cool - sell - unfair - shade

Trees are important in our life. They give us food and ① When we sit under the tree on hot days, we feel ② Farmers plant more trees in their ③ They get a lot of fruit from these trees and ④ them at the market.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Dina is a pupil in primary five. She likes helping patients. She wants to be a nurse when she grows up. On the summer holiday, she goes to the hospital near her house. The doctors and nurses like her. They teach her how to change bandages and give injections. She helps them at the hospital. She buys books about medicine, too.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dina wants to be a when she grows up.

- a vet b doctor c nurse d patient

2. The underlined word "patients" means people.

- a sick b healthy c helpful d useful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Dina learn from doctors and nurses?

4. Where does Dina go on the summer holiday?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. tortoise - very - Can - fast - run?2. important - food - eat - to - healthy - It's.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We drove to the shop and (buy) a gift for my mother.

2. Don't touch this electric wire. It's (safe).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

could you play the guitar

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite animal

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Fact file

Food	Bamboo
color	black and white

.....

.....

.....

Theme

2

Being responsible

Unit

10

Let's visit 

هيا نلّو مصر



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن الموجودة بالمدينة.

2. Practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something and to give directions.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بفعل شيء ما أو عدم فعله وإعطاء الاتجاهات.

3. Practice using questions and short answers.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.

4. Read and say words with diphthongs.

- يقرأ الطالب ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على ادغام.

5. Estimate with mental math.

- يقوم الطالب بالتقدير باستخدام الرياضيات الذهنية.

6. Write a paragraph about my town.

- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن مدينته.

7. Make a poster about my perfect town.

- يصنع الطالب ملصقاً عن مدينته المثالية.



LESSON

1

We Love Alexandria!



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



bank بنك



factory مصنع



monument نُصب تذكاري / أثر



library مكتبة



shopping mall مول تجاري

Places

الأماكن



square ميدان



station محطة



museum متحف



market سوق



beach شاطئ



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea
local cuisine
spend ages

شاي بالنعناع
مأكولات / أطباق محلية
يلضي الكثير من الوقت

originally
on vacation

في الأصل
في إجازة



Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

Countries	دول	Cities & towns	مدن كبيرة وصغيرة
Egypt	مصر	Alexandria	الإسكندرية
England	إنجلترا	Fayoum	الفيوم
Germany	ألمانيا	Cairo	القاهرة
		Barcelona	برشلونة

⑤ جميع أسماء الدول والمدن تبدأ بحرف capital.

stores	متاجر / محلات	friendly	ودود
tourist	سائح	the Pyramids	الأهرامات
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
chatting	دردشة	traditional food	طعام تقليدي
relaxing	مريح	fresh	طازج
excellent	ممتاز	modern buildings	مباني حديثة
culture	حضارة ثقافة	traditions	تقاليد
yet	حتى الآن	shopping	التسوق
exciting	مثير رائع	swimming	السباحة
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	mix of	مزيج / خليط من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present مضارع

serve	يقدم طعام
remind	يُذكّر
own	يملك

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماضٍ

served
reminded
owned

Irregular verbs

Present مضارع

think	يمتدّد
go	يذهب
find out	يكشف
see	يري

أفعال غير منتظمة

Past ماضٍ

thought
went
found out
saw

Study the following

- 1 Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة.
- 2 There's a lot to see and do here! هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا!
- 3 I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel. أحب الجلوس في الحديقة التي على سطح الفندق.
- 4 I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. أحب شرب الشاي المصري بالتنوع الحلو المذاق والدرشة مع الآخرين.
- 5 I've lived in Alexandria all my life. لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي.
- 6 You must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. يجب أن تزور مطعمي لتتذوق بعض الطعام المحلي.
- 7 We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة لذيذة.
- 8 I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market. أفضل شراء مكونات طعامي من السوق.
- 9 We spend ages walking around them. نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التجول حولهم.
- 10 I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة.
- 11 My favorite place is the beach. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ.
- 12 I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. أنا في إجازة هنا قادمًا من برشلونة.
- 13 I love the mix of modern and old buildings. أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة.
- 14 I like to find out about the culture and traditions. أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد.
- 15 There's a really big station in my town. هناك بالفعل محطة كبيرة في بلدي.

1 Listen and read: Who is from Alexandria? استمع واقرأ. من مدينته الإسكندرية؟

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص.



Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

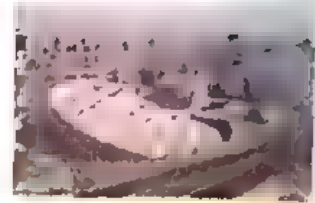
Arabic Meaning

- 1- حتى الآن
- 2- الحديقة فوق السطح
- 3- شاي بالتنوع
- 4- مريح

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet⁽¹⁾. I love just sitting in the roof garden⁽²⁾ of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea⁽³⁾ and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing⁽⁴⁾.

Unit 10

Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the **local cuisine** ⁽⁵⁾. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have **excellent** ⁽⁶⁾ supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my **ingredients** ⁽⁷⁾ at the market in the old town.



Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The **stores** ⁽⁸⁾ aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria — the shopping malls! We **spend** ⁽⁹⁾ **ages** ⁽¹⁰⁾ walking around them. We like the people. They are so **friendly** ⁽¹¹⁾!

Karim: I'm Egyptian, **originally** ⁽¹²⁾ from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach—there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in **summer** ⁽¹³⁾, so it's great to go there and swim.

Paulo: I'm on **vacation** ⁽¹⁴⁾ here from **Barcelona** ⁽¹⁵⁾. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home — a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old **buildings** ⁽¹⁶⁾. Also, I like to find out about the **culture** ⁽¹⁷⁾ and **traditions** ⁽¹⁸⁾. The library is amazing!

- ٥- لكلات محلبة
- ٦- مميزات
- ٧- مكونات الطعام
- ٨- متاجر
- ٩- يقضي وقت كثير
- ١٠- ودود
- ١١- اصلا / في الاصل
- ١٢- الصيف
- ١٣- عطلة
- ١٤- برشلونة
- ١٥- مباني
- ١٦- ثقافة / حضارة
- ١٧- تقاليد

2 Listen again. Circle the correct word:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Jens likes drinking tea in the **museum** / **hotel**.
- 2 Hanan buys her ingredients from the **supermarket** / **market**.
- 3 Kira and Lena like **shopping** / **swimming** in Alexandria.
- 4 Karim lives in **Cairo** / **Alexandria**.
- 5 Paula likes Alexandria because it is like **Cairo** / **Barcelona**.

3 Listen and repeat. Then look and write:

استمع وردد. ثم انظر واكتب.

station - factory - library - monument - bank - square - shopping mall



4 Listen and match the places and people:

استمع وصل الأماكن بالأشخاص.

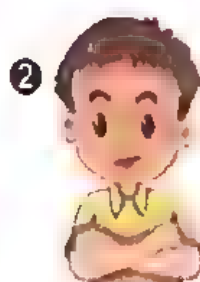
مواضع الأماكن والأشخاص

library - monument - factory - station

Sara



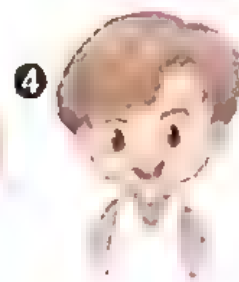
Ahmed



Dina



Youssef



5 Look at the places in Exercise 3. Which of the places are in your town? Talk to a partner:

انظر إلى الصور في تمرين ٣ أي من الأماكن موجودة في مدينتك؟ تكلم مع زميلك.



There's a really big station on my town.

That's right. There's also a library.



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Adel goes to Alexandria every

- ☐ a year ☐ b month ☐ c day ☐ d week

2. Adel stays in a big

- ☐ a bank ☐ b hotel ☐ c museum ☐ d park

3. Adel has lunch in a big

- ☐ a hotel ☐ b restaurant ☐ c museum ☐ d beach

4. Adel goes to Alexandria with his

- ☐ a friends ☐ b family ☐ c neighbors ☐ d cousins



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We buy our ingredients from the

- ☐ a museum ☐ b factory ☐ c bank ☐ d market

2. Sara went to the to travel by train.

- ☐ a stop ☐ b station ☐ c park ☐ d museum

3. I go to Alexandria and play on the

- ☐ a beach ☐ b factory ☐ c umbrellas ☐ d shopping mall

4. I like the people of Alexandria, they are very

- ☐ a bad ☐ b friendly ☐ c sad ☐ d tall



Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library. We also went to the cinema and watched an adventure film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

(الجزيرة - إدارة أبو النمرس ٢٠٢٣)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They went to Alexandria by

- ☐ a bus ☐ b car ☐ c foot ☐ d train



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



2. They went to the in the morning.

- ☐ beach ☐ cinema ☐ library ☐ restaurant

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they stay?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - from - town - We're - England - a small.

2. a really - place - exciting - Alexandria - to visit - is.

3. to - Ramy - wants - books - some - borrow.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where do you come from

2. i have lived in alexandria all my life.

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A Visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

exciting place to visit - favorite place is the beach

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



environment
trash

البيئة
قمامة

flower
trash can

زهرة
صندوق قمامة

Alexandria Library

مكتبة الإسكندرية

moment

لحظة

everybody

الجميع

quietly

بهدوء

upstairs

الطابق العلوي

elevator

مصعد

button

زر

loudly

بصوت عالي

Main Street

الشارع الرئيسي

High street

الشارع الرئيسي

Go straight

سير بشكل مباشر

Excuse me

معدرة

at the end

في نهاية

on your right

على يمينك

on the left

على يسارك

on the right

على اليمين

librarian

أمين المكتبة

tomorrow

غداً

Park Avenue

شارع الحديقة

Wait a moment.

انتظر لحظة.

Don't run.

لا تجري.

Walk quietly.

امشي بهدوء.

Go into the elevator.

اذهب إلى المصعد.

Stand back.

ارجع للخلف.

Push the number one button.

اضغط على الزر رقم واحد.

Keep the environment clean.

حافظ على نظافة البيئة.

Don't jump up and down.

لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل.

Turn right / left.

استدر يميناً / يساراً

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

wait	يَنتظر
close	يَغلِق
push	يَضغَط يدفع
jump	يَقفز
return	يَعود
turn	يَسْتَدِر
cross	يَعبُر
pick	يَلتَقِط

Past ماضٍ

waited
closed
pushed
jumped
returned
tuned
crossed
picked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

stand	يَقِف
choose	يَخْتار
bring	يَحضِر
lose	يَفْقِد

Past ماضٍ

stood
chose
brought
lost

Study the following

- 1 This is the Alexandria Library. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.
- 2 Can we go inside? هل يمكننا الدخول؟
- 3 Yes, OK. Let's go in. I'm going first! نعم حسناً. دعنا ندخل. سأدخل أولاً!
- 4 This is a very important place. هذا مكان هام جداً.
- 5 Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library? هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الطفل؟
- 6 The doors are closing. الأبواب تغلق.
- 7 What book are you reading? ما الكتاب الذي تقرأه؟
- 8 Do not eat in the library. لا تأكل في المكتبة.
- 9 Bring your book back in two weeks. أعد كتابك في خلال أسبوعين.
- 10 Drink your water outside. اشرب مياهك في الخارج.
- 11 Don't use your cell phone here. لا تستخدم هاتفك المحمول هنا.
- 12 Do not lose your book. لا تضيع كتابك.
- 13 Just cross the road. فقط اعبُر الشارع.

1 Imperative الأمر

- ① نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.
- أولاً الأمر المثبت.

ياقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل. Inf.

- Stand up! Open the door.

- ② يمكن أن يأتي قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص،
- Please, pick up that trash.
- Ali, close the window.
- ثانياً الأمر المنفي.

ياقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل. Don't / Never + inf.

- Don't eat in the library, please.
- Never waste your time.

③ لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر،

④ لا يأتي بعد فعل الأمر حرف جر (to)

2 Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

① للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهي:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to + اسم المكان?

- معذرة، كيف يمكنني أن أصل إلى.....؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?
- Is there a park near here?
- Where is the park, please?

② للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات،

- Turn right. استدر يميناً.
- Cross the road. اعبّر الشارع.
- Go straight. اذهب بطول.



1 Listen and read. Where are the children going?

استمع واقرأ

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

Reem : Wow! It's **amazing** ⁽¹⁾. Can we go inside?

Teacher : Wait a **moment** ⁽²⁾. Is **everybody** ⁽³⁾ here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.

Ali : I'm going first!

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk **quietly** ⁽⁴⁾. This is a very **important** ⁽⁵⁾ place.

Ali : I'm sorry.

Noha : Can we go **upstairs** ⁽⁶⁾ to the Children's Library?

Teacher : Yes. Go into the **elevator** ⁽⁷⁾. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one **button** ⁽⁸⁾, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع / مذهش

٢- لحظة

٣- الجميع

٤- بعدد

٥- هام

٦- المبنى العلوي

٧- مصعد

٨- زر

2 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل أمرية.

1 book - Choose - a - good - to read.

2 talk - loudly, - Don't - please.

3 write - in - Don't - the book.

4 the book - Return - its place - to.

Unit 10

3 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

اقرأ قواعد المكتبة. أعد كتابة القواعد بالأوامر.

① You should not eat in the library.

...Don't eat in the library!...

② You have to bring your book back in two weeks.

③ You need to drink your water outside.

④ You cannot use your cell phone here.

⑤ You should not lose your book.

⑥ You should ask the librarian if you need help

4 Use imperatives to show what you should or shouldn't do inside a park, using words from the box:

استخدم الأوامر لإظهار ما يجب أو لا يجب عليك فعله داخل الحديقة، باستخدام كلمات من القائمة:

~~environment~~ – park – flowers – help – trash can

① Keep the environment clean.

②

③

④

⑤

5 Look and read. Where does the tourist want to go?

انظر واقرأ. أين تريد أن تذهب السائحة؟

Excuse me,
how do I get
to the museum
from here?

Thank you
very much!



Go straight, turn left
at the end of the road
and the museum is on
your right.



6 Listen. Write the letters on the map.

استمع - اكتب الحروف على الخريطة.

استمع - اكتب الحروف على الخريطة



7 Look at the map. You are at the school. Ask for and give directions to different places with a partner.

انظر إلى الخريطة. أنت في المدرسة. اسأل وأجب عن الاتجاهات إلى أماكن مختلفة مع زميلك.



Excuse me, how do I get to the shopping mall?

Just cross the road!

Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

3. We should encourage our ... to visit the library.

- ☐ a sisters ☐ b children ☐ c parents ☐ d cousins

4. The children should keep the library .

- ☐ a had ☐ b sad ☐ c clean ☐ d tall

5. They should ask the ... if they need help.

- ☐ a farmer ☐ b teacher ☐ c librarian ☐ d mechanic

6. The children shouldn't run or make ...

- ☐ a cakes ☐ b noise ☐ c books ☐ d pens



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the library - eat - in - Don't .
2. go - Children's Library - Can - to - we - the? .
3. is - important - place - This - a very. .



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. ... (Doesn't) eat in the library.
2. Please, ... (drinks) water outside.
3. Go straight. It's ... (in) the left.
4. How do you ... (got) to school?
5. ... (Turns) right. My school is on the left.
6. Don't ... (writing) in the books.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

not eat in the library - walk quietly

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson

3

Gabi Learns A Lesson



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



recognize

يتعرف على

lost

فقد

strange-looking

غريب المظهر

tell the truth

يقول الحقيقة

entertain

يرفيه يسلي

creature

مخلوق

foolish

أحمق

apologize

يعتذر

villager

قروي (أحد سكان القرية)

walk far

يمشي بعيداً

sacks of beans

أكياس الفاصوليا

road

طريق

ibis

طائر أبو منجل

land

الأرض

branches

أغصان / فروع

anyway

على أي حال

snake

ثعبان

even

حتى

unkindly

بطريقة غير لطيفة

crowds

عدد كبير من الناس (حشود)

dark

مظلم

enormous

هائل / كبير جداً

jerboa

حيوان الجربوع

rudely

بوتاحة

sounds

أصوات

traders

التجار

Conjugation of verbs

تعرّف على الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

apologize

يعتذر

decide

يقرر

look at

ينظر إلى

recognize

يتعرف على

turn

يلتفت

walk far

يمشي بعيداً

watch

يشاهد

pretend

يتظاهر

Past ماضٍ

apologized

decided

looked at

recognized

turned

walked far

watched

pretended

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

begin

يبدأ

fly

يطير

hear

يسمع

know

يعرف

say

يقول

see

يرى

sell

يبيع

understand

يفهم

Past ماضٍ

began

flew

heard

knew

said

saw

sold

understood

Study the following

- 1 Which animal does Gabi meet first? ما الحيوان الذي التقى به جابي أولاً؟
- 2 I will take them to the market for you. سوف آخذهم إلى السوق من أجلك.
- 3 He turned left and then right. استدار يساراً ثم يميناً.
- 4 Are you lost? هل أنت تائه؟
- 5 The ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way. استطاع طائر أبو منجل أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
- 6 Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. رأى جابي ثعباناً يراقبه من أغصان شجرة.
- 7 He wasn't telling the truth. لم يكن يقول الحقيقة.
- 8 The snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds. ذهب الثعبان إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.
- 9 Look at those enormous ears. انظر إلى تلك الأذان الضخمة.
- 10 Do you need any help? هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟
- 11 The jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders. استطاع الجربوع سماع أصوات تجار السوق.
- 12 He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان نادماً.
- 13 He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day. قرر أن ينام ، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.
- 14 Was Gabi right to behave in this way? هل كان جابي على حق في التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟

1 Listen, and read. Which animal does Gabi meet first?

استمع واقرأ.

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

One day, a villager⁽¹⁾ wanted to sell his beans in the market⁽²⁾, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans⁽³⁾ - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked along⁽⁴⁾ the road⁽⁵⁾. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize⁽⁶⁾ the road.

أجابات الأسئلة

- 1- فروي
- 2- سوق
- 3- أكياس الفاصوليا
- 4- بمحاذاة
- 5- طريق
- 6- يتعرف على



"Are you **lost**⁽⁷⁾?" called an **ibis**⁽⁸⁾. Gabi had never seen such a **strange-looking**⁽⁹⁾ bird.

"No, I'm not lost," **pretended**⁽¹⁰⁾ Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way. Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the **branches**⁽¹¹⁾ of a tree. "You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't **telling the truth**⁽¹²⁾. "**Anyway**⁽¹³⁾, **even**⁽¹⁴⁾ if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said **unkindly**⁽¹⁵⁾. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to **entertain**⁽¹⁶⁾ the **crowds**⁽¹⁷⁾. It began to get **dark**⁽¹⁸⁾. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking **creature**⁽¹⁹⁾. Look at those **enormous**⁽²⁰⁾ ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the **jerboa**⁽²¹⁾. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi **rudely**⁽²²⁾. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the **sounds**⁽²³⁾ of the market **traders**⁽²⁴⁾.

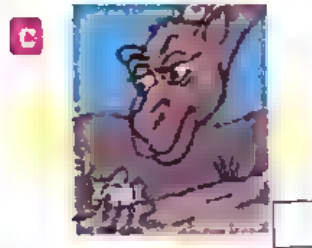
"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was **foolish**⁽²⁵⁾ and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to **apologize**⁽²⁶⁾ and ask for their help the next day.

- ٧- ضال
- ٨- ليو ممل
- ٩- غريب المظهر
- ١٠- تظاهر
- ١١- أغصان/ فروع
- ١٢- يقول الحقيقة
- ١٣- على أي حال
- ١٤- حتى
- ١٥- بطريقة غير لطيفة
- ١٦- يسلي
- ١٧- الحشود
- ١٨- مظلّم
- ١٩- مخلوق
- ٢٠- هائل/ كبير جدًا
- ٢١- الجرّوع
- ٢٢- دقّاجة
- ٢٣- أصوات
- ٢٤- التجار
- ٢٥- لحمق
- ٢٦- يعتذر

2. Read the story again. Put the pictures in the correct order:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. رتب الصور.



1

3 Read the story again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة في القائمة.

fly – hear – help – snake

- 1 At the start, Gabi offered to the villager.
- 2 The ibis could help because he could over the land.
- 3 The could help because he went to the market every day.
- 4 The jerboa could help because he could very well.

4 Read and think. Talk to your partner:

اقرأ وافكر. تحدث مع زميلك.

- 1 Why do you think that Gabi did not tell the truth to any of the animals?
 - a He didn't want anyone to know that he was lost.
 - b He was angry.
 - c He was clever.
- 2 Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
 - a Yes, because he didn't need help.
 - b No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
 - c Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.
- 3 What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
 - a You shouldn't talk to strangers.
 - b Being rude is important.
 - c Asking for help is good.



Pronunciation

⊙ الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

1 Listen and repeat:

استمع وكرر:

/əʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين / عرض	below أسفل	wrote كتب	grow ينمو
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح / يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم

⊙ أحيانا يتم نطق نفس الصوت بطرق مختلفة مثلما في كلمتي **ate** & **eight**

2 Look at the table. Listen again and say:

انظر للجدول. استمع مرة أخرى وقل:

1. go	2. bite	3. boy	4. make
show	right	toy	play

3 Listen and say. Write the words in the correct places in the table:

استمع وقل. اكتب الكلمات في المكان الصحيح في الجدول:

1. ache	2. below	3. eight	4. bake	5. coin	6. time
7. grow	8. bike	9. enjoy	10. wrote	11. write	12. point

4 Choose the correct word from the table above:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من الجدول أعلاه:

grow • eight • ache • make

- I have a bad tooth.
- Look! There are _____ trees in the garden.
- Let's _____ a cake for my birthday!
- Does the farmer _____ vegetables?



⊙ الإجابة التقديرية أو التقريبية "estimated answer" ليست الإجابة الفعلية وإنما تعد تخمينًا جيدًا. على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بإضافة العدد ١٧ إلى العدد ١٢ فانت تعلم أن الإجابة هي "قريبة من ٣٠" وليست قريبة من ٦٠. هناك بعض المصطلحات التي يمكن أن نستخدمها في اللغة الإنجليزية للتعبير عن الإجابة التقديرية يمكنك أن تقول:

- It's about ... إنه حوالي ... - It's around ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's close to ... إنه قريب من ... - It's near ... إنه قريب من ...



5 Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer:

انتظر بسرعة وضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقريبية الصحيحة:

- ① $34 + 47 =$ 60 - 80 - 120
② $77 + 120 =$ 80 - 130 - 200
③ $338 + 336 =$ 480 - 680 - 980
④ $1050 + 50 + 104 =$ 1000 - 1200 - 2000
⑤ $17 + 39 + 44 + 308 =$ 300 - 400 - 500

⊙ لتقدير حاصل جمع عددين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر يجب أن تحدد الرقم الأكبر في كل عدد. لاحظ أولاً مكونات العدد.

1	5	4	7
آلاف	مئات	عشرات	آحاد

- فمثلاً في العددين 27 / 36

⊙ ننظر للرقم الأكبر في كل عدد حيث يمثل (2) عشرون في 27 وتمثل 3 الرقم (30) في 36 لذلك حاصل

جمعهما سيزيد عن 50 ولن يصل إلى 70 إذا بالتقدير يصبح الناتج حوالي 60.

⊙ إذا طلب تقدير جمع 423 / 472 ننظر إلى الرقم الأكبر وهو المئات ومجموعات المئات في العددين يساوي 800

لذلك إذا طلب منك التقدير بناء على مجموع 23 / 72 بالتقريب يكون الناتج 900.





Activities



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

along - walk - well - enormous - sounds

I buy everything for my mom from the market. I **1** to the market because it is near my house. I walk **2** the road. I know the road **3** The market is very big. It's **4** , I find everything in this market.



Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

An old man wanted to buy food for his family, but he couldn't go. He asked his little son, Sameh, to go to the market for him. Sameh accepted and went to the market. On his way to the market, he met an old woman who was carrying heavy bags. He offered to help her, and the woman accepted and she was very happy. At the end, the woman thanked him for his help and gave him some apples.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sameh was a boy.
☐ a bad ☐ b busy ☐ c good ☐ d sad
- The woman gave Sameh some
☐ a carrots ☐ b tomatoes ☐ c oranges ☐ d apples

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
- Why did the woman thank Sameh?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- need - any - Do - help - you?

- the - beans - sacks - Give - of - me.

- first - does - Which - Gabi - animal - meet?



Unit 10 **Helping others**

4. fly - land - The ibis - above - could - the.

5. telling - wasn't - He - the truth.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. are you lost

2. retaj and Karma went to the market

5 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Helping others

Guiding phrases

offer help - respect them



LESSONS

4 & 5

★ Writing & Project



key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



tourist attractions	اماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح
delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن
New York	نيويورك
waterpark	منتزه مائي
park	حديقة عامة

zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	اسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون

المدن والمناطق

Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
theaters	المسارح
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب
middle	منتصف / وسط
International Park	الحديقة الدولية
shade	ظل
the River Thames	نهر التايمز

bridges	كباري
walking around	التجول
warm	قلق
plenty	الكثير
treasures	كنوز
New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
picnic	تزهة خلوية

amazing	مذهل
beautiful	جميل
cool	رائع
exciting	مثير
famous	مشهور
fascinating	رائعة

fun	مرح / ممتع
large	كبير
negative	سلبي
positive	إيجابي
perfect	مثالي
wonderful	رائع



Conjugation of verbs **انصريف الافعال**

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
rain	تمطر	see	يرى
visit	يزور	take	يأخذ
like	يحب	choose	يختار
encourage	يشجع	feed	يطعم
	rained		saw
	visited		look
	liked		chose
	encouraged		fed


Study the following

- This is one of the most exciting cities in the world.
هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم.
- It often rains here, but it doesn't matter.
غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم.
- There are lots of fun things to do.
يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها.
- You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames.
يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب على نهر التايمز.
- There are plenty of different restaurants to choose from.
يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها.
- You can find delicious food from all over the world here!
يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.
- There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein.
يوجد العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة.
- The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot.
المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا.
- You can visit the beautiful International Park.
يمكنك زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.
- There are some amazing treasures there.
يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
- I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.
لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.
- There is a big zoo right next to the school.
توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة.
- We can help to feed the animals.
يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
- There is a waterpark that is always open.
يوجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا.
- It's free to go in!
الدخول مجاني!
- There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food.
يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة.
- This is our perfect town!
هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

1 Read. Which place is the writer describing? Check (✓) the correct photo below:

اقرأ. أي الأماكن يصفها الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة أسفل:

استمع إلى النص:



This is one of the most **exciting**⁽¹⁾ cities in the world. It often rains here, but **it doesn't matter**⁽²⁾ because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing **tourist attractions**⁽³⁾. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the **British Museum**⁽⁴⁾. You can take a **relaxing**⁽⁵⁾ boat trip on the **River Thames**⁽⁶⁾ and go under the **famous bridges**⁽⁷⁾. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are **plenty**⁽⁸⁾ of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مثير
- ٢- لا يهم
- ٣- الجذب السياحي
- ٤- المتحف البريطاني
- ٥- مريح
- ٦- نهر التايمز
- ٧- كباري مشهورة
- ٨- الكثير



a Cairo



b New York



c London

2 Look and find. Are the adjectives positive or negative? Why?

انظر وأوجد. هل الصفات إيجابية أم سلبية؟ لماذا؟

- 1 Find an adjective that describes the city.
- 2 Find an adjective that describes the boat trip.
- 3 Find an adjective that describes the food.

Tip!

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.



How to write a descriptive paragraph

كيفية كتابة فقرة وصفية

You are going to write a description of your town or city. You want to encourage people to visit it. Write notes about the good things about your town or city. Think about famous attractions:

سوف تكتب وصفاً لمدينتك أو بلدك، وتريد تشجيع الناس على زيارتها. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة عن بلدك أو مدينتك. فكر في معالم الجذب الشهيرة. ضع الآتي في الاعتبار:

- famous attractions

أماكن جذب شهيرة

- location - is it near a beach / river?

الموقع هل هي قريبة من الشاطئ / النهر؟

- history

التاريخ

- culture

الثقافة / الحضارة

- arts

الفنون

3 Read the paragraph about New Alamein. Underline the adjectives:

اقرأ الفقرة القادمة عن مدينة العلمين الجديدة. ضع خط تحت الصفات،

استمع إلى النص:



NEW ALAMEIN

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein⁽¹⁾. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle⁽²⁾



Arabic Meaning

- ١- العلمين الجديدة
- ٢- وسط
- ٣- الحديقة الدولية
- ٤- التاريخ
- ٥- المركز اللري
- ٦- كلول

of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park⁽³⁾. If you want to learn about the fascinating history⁽⁴⁾ of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center⁽⁵⁾. There are some amazing treasures⁽⁶⁾ there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



How to make a poster about your perfect town كيف تصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية؟

Make a poster about your perfect town. Think about the types of places that you want in your perfect town. Here are some ideas

اصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية. فكر في أنواع الأماكن التي تريدناها في مدينتك المثالية. إليك بعض الأفكار.

a waterpark	متنزه مائي
a park	حديقة عامة
a zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق

Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل.

1. Look at the poster. Study the heading, text, and pictures.

انظروا إلى الملصق. ادرسوا العنوان والنص والصور.

2. Think about your poster. What will you include? فكروا في ملصقكم. ماذا سيتضمن؟

3. Decide who will do what. Do your research. قررُوا من سيفعل ماذا. قوموا بالبحث.

4. Work together to make your poster. Check your work at the end.

اعملوا سويًا لصنع الملصق. تأكدوا من عملكم في النهاية.

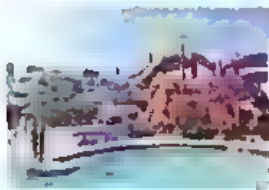
استمع إلى النص:



Our perfect town

Heading

العنوان الرئيسي



In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!

Pictures

الصور

Text

النص

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Salma lives in a small

- ☐ a village ☐ b town ☐ c city ☐ d hotel

2. Salma likes to play with her after school.

- ☐ a toys ☐ b friends ☐ c parents ☐ d cousins

3. There is a next to Salma's house.

- ☐ a park ☐ b water park ☐ c museum ☐ d hotel

4. Salma lives with her

- ☐ a friends ☐ b parents ☐ c uncles ☐ d aunts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

most - city - fun - Tower - bridge

I'm Amr. I live in Cairo. It's a big ① It's one of the ② exciting cities in the world. There are lots of ③ things to do. You can visit the Cairo ④ It's very high.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. find - here - You - delicious - can - food.
2. one - cities - of - This is - the most - exciting.
3. you - do - What - in - can - New Alamein?
4. any - amazing - Are - treasures - there?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where do you live, amal?

2. Lena and heba went to the park



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Review

Places



bank
بنك



factory
مصنع



monument
نصب تذكاري / أثر



library
مكتبة



shopping mall
مول تجاري



square
ميدان



station
محطة



museum
متحف



market
سوق



beach
شاطئ



supermarket
سوبر ماركت



hotel
فندق



restaurant
مطعم

mint tea

شاي بالنعناع

local cuisine

مأكولات / أطباق محلية

shopping

التسوق

spend ages

يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally

أصلاً / في الأصل

on vacation

في إجازة

apologize

يعتذر

tourist attractions

أماكن الجذب السياحي

relaxing

مريح

delicious

لذيذ

Cairo

القاهرة

London

لندن

New York

نيويورك

waterpark

منتزه مائي

recognize

بمعرف على

lost

نائه

strange-looking

غريب المظهر

tell the truth

يقول الحقيقة

entertain

يرقه يلي

location

موقع

history

التاريخ

culture

الحضارة / الثقافة

arts

الفنون

exciting	مثير
famous	مشهور
fascinating	رائقة
fun	مرح ممتع
cool	رائع

negative
positive
perfect
wonderful

سلمي
إيجابي
مثالي
رائع

Oxford

traditions	تقاليد
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
branches	أغصان فروع
crowds	الحشود
enormous	هائل
jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
rudely	بوقاحة

traders	التجار
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
International Park	الحديقة الدولية
Archaeological center	المركز الأثري
shade	ظل
it doesn't matter	لا يهم
treasures	كنوز
New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة

Conjugation of verbs

أشكال الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

مضارع

serve	يقدم طعام
remind	يُذكّر
borrow	يستعير
own	يملك
push	يضغط يدفع
turn	يستدر
cross	يعبر
hurry	يسرع
recognize	يتعرف على
pretend	يتظاهر
encourage	يشجع

Past

ماضي

served
reminded
borrowed
owned
pushed
turned
crossed
hurried
recognized
pretended
encouraged

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

find out	يكشف
show	يبين
stand	يقف
choose	يختار
write	يكتب
lose	يفقد
feed	يطعم

Past

ماضي

found out
showed
stood
chose
wrote
lost
fed

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

1 Imperative

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.
- أولاً الأمر المثبت.

ب. باقى الجملة + مصدر الفعل Inf

- Do your homework.

- يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المذهب أو اسم شخص.

- Please, open the window.

- Ali, close the window.

- ثانياً الأمر المنفى.

ب. باقى الجملة + مصدر الفعل Inf + Don't / Never

- Don't play in the street.

- Never come to school late.

- لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

- لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to)

2 Giving directions

- للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهى:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to + اسم المكان?

- معذرة، كيف يمكننى أن أصل إلى.....؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?

- Is there a park near here?

- Where is the park, please?

- للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات.

- Turn right. استدر يمينا.

- Cross the road. اعبّر الشارع.

- Go straight. اذهب بطلول.

Lesson 1

A visit to Alexandria

- 1 Last week was my holiday. I went to Alexandria with my family. It's an exciting place to visit. My favorite place is the beach. We went to the beach and had a great time. I swam and played football with my brothers.

Lesson 2

Library rules

- 2 At the library, we should respect the rules. We should put the books on the shelf. We should walk quietly. We should not eat in the library. We should not use our cell phones there. We should not talk loudly.

Lesson 3

Helping others

- 3 We should be helpful. We should offer help to anyone carrying heavy bags. We should also help old people. If a person is poor and needs money, we should give him money. If a person is hungry, we should give them food.

Activating Unit 10

My city

- 4 I like my city, Alexandria very much. It's very clean and beautiful. The people in the city are very friendly. There are many places to visit. There are big markets, shopping malls, schools and hospitals. I love my beautiful city.



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:



1. Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my (brothers - teachers - friends)
2. Alexandria is a big (town - city - village)
3. There's even a (beach - river - lake)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

Library - What - reading - going

- A : Where are the children ?
 B : They are going to Alexandria
 A : are they doing?
 B : They are stories.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

Uncle Mahmoud has a big house with a beautiful garden outside the house. He has no children, but he has two pets. He likes keeping pets and he looks after them very well. He has a dog called "Lion" and a cat called "Pos Pos". Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every day. He is a kind man.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Does uncle Mahmoud have children?
2. What does uncle Mahmoud like keeping?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Uncle Mahmoud has a beautiful garden the house. (outside - inside - under)
4. He has a dog called (Tiger - Lion - Fox)
5. Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every (day - week - year)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Come and lunch with us.

☐ a having

☐ b had

☐ c have

2. Alexandria is a big

☐ a farm

☐ b park

☐ c city

3. Study the lesson again and the exercise.

☐ a make

☐ b do

☐ c close

4. We keep the environment clean.

☐ a can't

☐ b should

☐ c shouldn't

5. People were buried in when they died.

☐ a parks

☐ b tombs

☐ c farms

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. be - tomorrow - Don't - late.

2. Library - s - the - This - Alexandria.

3. do - How - the - I - get to - station?

4. there - Is - a factory - here - near?

5. your - in - money - Keep - a bank.



Activity

ON UNIT

10

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة



1. Hany goes to Alexandria with his

☐ a toys

☐ b family

☐ c friends

☐ d books

2. Alexandria is a very city.

☐ a big

☐ b tall

☐ c small

☐ d old

3. Hany stays in a hotel near the

☐ a beach

☐ b train station

☐ c park

☐ d school

4. Hany has lunch at the

☐ a party

☐ b restaurant

☐ c beach

☐ d station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Don't use your phone in the library.

☐ a call

☐ b cell

☐ c book

☐ d toy

2. The food in this restaurant is very good. It tastes

☐ a bad

☐ b ugly

☐ c delicious

☐ d high

3. I love sitting in the roof of the hotel.

☐ a square

☐ b museum

☐ c garden

☐ d station

4. I prefer to buy my ingredients at the

☐ a museum

☐ b market

☐ c library

☐ d hotel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

international - beach - exciting - hot - middle

New Atamein is a city in north of Egypt. There many ① things to do.

The city is on the ②, so you can visit the cool sea when it's ③

This beautiful beach is 14 kms long There also a large green lake right in the

④ of the city.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



Unit 10

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: **Read the text and answer the questions:**

Hi friends! My name is Mai and I live in Ras El-Bar. It isn't a very big town near the sea. About 10,000 people live here. There are about thirty shops in Ras El-Bar and there are three supermarkets. In my town, you can get everything you need. There are five banks and a post office. There is a police station and a library. I usually go to the market with my mom.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of this passage is about
☐ a Mai's family ☐ b Ras El-Bar ☐ c the sea ☐ d the shops
- Mai lives in a town.
☐ a small ☐ b big ☐ c large ☐ d cute

B- Answer the following questions:

- How many people live in Ras El-Bar?
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- need - Do - any - you - help?
- in - , please - the - Don't - library - eat

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- (Didn't) talk loudly, please.
- (Keeps) your classroom clean.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

which place would you like to visit

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

many places - beautiful city

Being responsible

Unit

11

Vacations

العطلات



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about vacations
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثاً ويكتب عن العطلات.
2. Think about environmental responsibility.
- يفكر الطالب في المسؤولية البيئية.
3. Practice using prepositions of time.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
4. Listen to a conversation.
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة.
5. Learn about different types of triangles.
- يتعلم الطالب من الأنواع المختلفة من المثلثات.
6. Read and say words with the "th" sound.
- يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها صوت th.
7. Think about my perfect vacation.
- يفكر الطالب في عطلة مثالية.
8. Write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.
- يكتب الطالب تدويناً يومية عن أفضل يوم في العطلة.
9. Make a poster for a vacation destination.
- يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق عن وجهة الإجازة.



استمع الى المفردات



hotel
فندق



suitcase
حقيرة سفر



swimming pool
حمام سباحة



high-rise building
ناطحة سحاب



theme park
ملاهي



ticket
تذكرة



beach
شاطيء



camera
كاميرا



city
مدينة



museum
متحف



airport
مطار



sunglasses
نظارة شمس



tourist
سائح



passport
جواز سفر

luckily
Singapore
flight
vacation
footprints
daughter
husband
gardens

لحسن الحظ
سنغافورة
رحلة جوية
إجازة / عطلة
أثار القدم
ابنة
زوج
منطقة حدائق

aloud
degree
view
island
son
floor
vanilla

بصوت عال
درجة الحرارة
منظر
جزيرة
ابن
طابق / دور في مبنى
فانيليا

a business trip رحلة عمل
a boat trip رحلة (نزهة) بالقارب
from all around the world من جميع أنحاء العالم

In the middle of في منتصف
by the Bay بجوار الخليج
a really special place مكان مميز جدًا

Adjectives

wonderful / lovely رائع
comfortable مريح

busy مزدحم
huge ضخم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

arrive يصل
visit يزور
relax يستريح
pack يحزم (حقائب)

Past ماضٍ

arrived
visited
relaxed
packed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

spend يقضي (وقت)
fly يطير / يسافر جوا
take photos يلتقط صور
leave يغادر
sleep ينام

Past ماضٍ

spent
flew
took photos
left
slept

Study the following

- 1 They are on a business trip traveling around the world.
- إنهم مسافرون حول العالم في رحلة عمل.
- 2 Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room.
- لحسن الحظ حصلنا على غرفة رائعة في فندق.
- 3 The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.
- المنظر جميل ويمكننا أن نرى الشاطئ.
- 4 There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!
- يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق.
- 5 It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived.
- لم تستغرق الكثير من الوقت لكي نمر من المطار عندما وصلنا.
- 6 We got our suitcases straight away.
- حصلنا على حقائب السفر فوراً.
- 7 There are lots of high-rise buildings.
- يوجد الكثير من ناطحات السحاب.
- 8 There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
- يوجد الكثير من الحدائق والأشجار لكي نجلس تحتها ولتستريح.
- 9 We visited the museum of ice cream!
- زرنا متحف الآيس كريم.
- 10 I hope you are all well.
- أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعاً بخير.
- 11 Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
- الآن يجب أن أجد تذاكري وجواز سفري وأحزم حقائبي مرة أخرى.

1 Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Where are Uncle Hani and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Singapore City

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



To: Samiax@mail.com

Subject: My trip

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from **Singapore**⁽¹⁾! It's hot here - about 36 **degrees**⁽²⁾. Luckily, we've got a lovely **hotel**⁽³⁾ room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge **swimming pool**⁽⁴⁾ on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The **flight**⁽⁵⁾ from India took about six hours, but it was **comfortable**⁽⁶⁾ and we both slept. It didn't take long to **get through**⁽⁷⁾ the airport when we arrived - we got our **suitcases**⁽⁸⁾ straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of **high-rise buildings**⁽⁹⁾, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the **Bay**⁽¹⁰⁾ is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're **in the middle**⁽¹¹⁾ of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a **theme park**⁽¹²⁾. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the **museum**⁽¹³⁾ of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to **Japan**⁽¹⁴⁾ tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our **tickets**⁽¹⁵⁾ and **passports**⁽¹⁶⁾ and **pack**⁽¹⁷⁾ our suitcases again!

Love

Nadia

Arabic Meaning

١- دولة سنغافورة

٢- درجات حرارة

٣- فلدق

٤- حمام سباحة

٥- رحلة جوية

٦- مريح

٧- يمل عبر

٨- حقائب سفر

٩- للطحات سحب

١٠- خليج

١١- في منتصف

١٢- ملاهى

١٣- متحف

١٤- دولة اليابان

١٥- تذكر

١٦- جوازات سفر

١٧- يحزم (حقائب)

2 Listen again. Check (✓) the places that Nadia and Hani visited in Singapore.

استمع مرة أخرى. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الأماكن التي زارتها ناديا وهاني في سنغافورة.

1- a swimming pool ☐

2- an airport

3- a theme park ☐

4- an ice cream museum

5- a zoo ☐

6- a park

3 Read again. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. حدد إن كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة في كراسك.

1- Nadia and Hani are staying at a friend's house.

2- They flew from Cairo.

3- They thought the Gardens by the Bay was lovely.

4- Yesterday they went to a museum.

4 Listen and say. Then write:

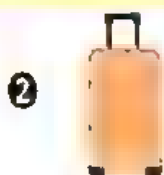
استمع وقل. ثم اكتب:

hotel - passport - swimming pool - suitcase - ticket - tourist



1

ticket



2



3



4



5



6

5 Read. Are these things you take on vacation, or places you go on vacation? Write them on the correct list:

اقرأ. هل هذه الأشياء التي تأخذها معك في إجازة أم هي أماكن تذهب إليها في إجازة؟ اكتبهم في المكان الصحيح.

beach - camera - city - hotel - museum - passport - suitcase - sunglasses
swimming pool - theme park - ticket

Things you take on vacation أشياء تأخذها معك في إجازة	Places you go on vacation أماكن تذهب إليها في إجازة
- suitcase	- beach

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

تمتع الاستماع بخلاف التمارين



- Osama went to last month.
☐ a Cairo ☐ b Dubai ☐ c Alexandria ☐ d Luxor
- There are many buildings.
☐ a short ☐ b high ☐ c fair ☐ d small
- Osama went on rides at the theme
☐ a building ☐ b park ☐ c house ☐ d wheels
- Osama went on a trip.
☐ a car ☐ b boat ☐ c bike ☐ d taxi

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- There is a park in my town.
☐ a same ☐ b theme ☐ c boat ☐ d thing
- When you need to travel around the world, you need a
☐ a password ☐ b passport ☐ c museum ☐ d message
- Tourists usually stay in
☐ a museums ☐ b hotels ☐ c suitcases ☐ d zoos
- I like going to the club and swim in the
☐ a city ☐ b swimming pool ☐ c hotel ☐ d airport

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- you - Can - it - believe?
- a boat - went - trip - We - on.
- you - well - I - are - all - hope.
- our tickets - have to - and - I - find - passports.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

- do Amr and tamer go to Singapore?

- we will fly to Japan tomorrow



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson

2

* A special trip



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



check in	يسجل وصوله للفندق
traditional	تقليدي
day trip	رحلة نهارية (في النهار)
diary	مفكرة يومية

diary entry	تدوينة في المفكرة اليومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts / crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stalls	أكشاك



leaflet	مشور / كراسة دعائية
tour	جولة
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
culture	حضارة / ثقافة
trading center	مركز تجاري
rug	سجادة
on the way	في الطريق
idea	فكرة
home	وطن
citadel	قلعة
The Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني

meeting	مقابلة
skin	جلد
chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
midnight	منتصف الليل
tour guide	مرشد سياحي
archaeological	أثري
arts and crafts	فنون وحرف
museum	متحف
Jordan	الأردن
Jordanian	لواتني
the Dead Sea	البحر الميت

Conjugation of verbs

أصناف الأفعال

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	ماضٍ	Present	ماضٍ
check in	يصل للفندق	buy	يشترى
head out	يتوجه إلى	drive	يقود (سيارة)
float	يطفو	write down	يسجل / يدون
walk around	يتجول في	go back	يعود
discover	يكشف		
checked in		bought	
headed out		drove	
floated		wrote down	
walked around		went back	
discovered			



Study the following

- 1 Enjoy some free time in the city. - استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة.
- 2 Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. - اليوم نستمتع بجولة في عمان.
- 3 Today we head out of the city for a day trip. - اليوم نتوجه إلى خارج المدينة في رحلة نهارية.
- 4 You will find lots of local Jordanian culture. - ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.
- 5 No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. - لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.
- 6 There is so much salt in this sea. - يوجد الكثير جدا من الملح في هذا البحر.
- 7 We leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. - نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحا لننقود سيارة لمدة ٣ ساعات عائدين إلى عمان.
- 8 We will stop on the way for lunch. - سنتوقف في الطريق للغداء.
- 9 It only took an hour to reach our destination. - استغرقت ساعة فقط للوصول لوجهتنا.
- 10 Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. - اشترى الكثير من الناس مصنوعات يدوية أردنية تقليدية من الأكشاك.
- 11 Today was the best day ever! - كان اليوم افضل يوم على الاطلاق.
- 12 We had the chance to wander through the streets. - اتبعت لنا الفرصة وتجولنا خلال الشوارع.
- 13 There is so much salt in the sea that you are able to float on the water. - يوجد ملح كثير جدًا في البحر يمكنك من الطفو على الماء.



Definitions

تعريفات

A diary

مفكرة يومية

is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.

A diary entry

تدوين في المفكرة

is a piece of writing in a diary.



Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

① نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6th, 2010.

1

on

② نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.
- We play basketball **at** lunchtime / **at** night.
- **at** midnight

2

at

③ نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- We visit our cousins **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- They arrived **in** the morning.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

3

in

④ لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11th.

1 Read, think, and say. What country would you like to visit? Why?

اقرأ وفكر وقل. ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to visit Zambia because I want to see elephants and lions.





2 Listen and read the leaflet. How many museums can you visit on this trip?

استمع وأقرأ المنشور. كم عدد المتاحف التي يمكنك زيارتها في هذه الرحلة؟

DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8

Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in⁽¹⁾ to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional⁽²⁾ Jordanian dinner in the evening



Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel⁽³⁾ before exploring the Roman Amphitheater⁽⁴⁾ and the Archaeological Museum⁽⁵⁾. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets⁽⁶⁾.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a day trip⁽⁷⁾ to As-Salt⁽⁸⁾. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts⁽⁹⁾ to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover⁽¹⁰⁾ the history⁽¹¹⁾ of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center⁽¹²⁾.

Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete⁽¹³⁾ without a trip to the Dead Sea⁽¹⁴⁾. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud⁽¹⁵⁾, which is very good for your skin.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport⁽¹⁶⁾ at 5 pm.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- يسجل وصول فندق
- ٢- تقليدي
- ٣- قلعة عمان
- ٤- المدرج الروماني
- ٥- المتحف الأثري
- ٦- أسواق
- ٧- رحلة نهائية
- ٨- مدينة السلط (الأردن)
- ٩- فنون وحرف
- ١٠- اكتشاف
- ١١- تاريخ
- ١٢- مركز تجاري
- ١٣- مكتمل
- ١٤- البحر الميت
- ١٥- طين
- ١٦- مطار



3 Read again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ مرة أخرى وحدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة.

- 1- On the first day, you can see the Roman Amph theater.
- 2- You visit As-Salt before you visit the Dead Sea.
- 3- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan's capital city.
- 4- The markets in As-Salt sell traditional arts and crafts.
- 5- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin.
- 6- You arrive at the airport on day 5, at 5 am.

4 Read Nahla's diary entry. Which day is she describing? How do you know?

اقرأ تدوينة نهلة اليومية. أي يوم تصف؟ كيف تعرف؟

Dear Diary,

استمع إلى النص



Thursday, October 6th

Today was the best day ever!⁽¹⁾ I love anything⁽²⁾ to do with history- I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special⁽³⁾ day for me. The bus ride⁽⁴⁾ wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach⁽⁵⁾ our destination⁽⁶⁾. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite⁽⁷⁾ quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through⁽⁸⁾ the streets and several⁽⁹⁾ people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts⁽¹⁰⁾ from the stalls⁽¹¹⁾. I bought a lovely colorful rug⁽¹²⁾. Saleh (our tour guide⁽¹³⁾) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

Arabic Vocabulary

- ١- على الإطلاق
- ٢- أي شيء
- ٣- مميز
- ٤- جولة بالأتوبيس
- ٥- يصل إلى
- ٦- جهة الوصول
- ٧- إلى حد ما
- ٨- يتجول عبر
- ٩- عدية
- ١٠- مصنوعات يدوية
- ١١- أكشاك
- ١٢- سجادة
- ١٣- مرشد سياحي

5 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in: أكمل الجمل بـ at / on / in

- 1- Dad is a baker. He works ----- the mornings.
- 2- We go to the club ----- Saturdays.
- 3- Does our next class start ----- 2 pm?
- 4- Grandma was born ----- 1962.
- 5- Reem's birthday is ----- December 4th.

6 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in: أكمل الفقرة بـ at / on / in :

1 Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed 2
4 o'clock 3 the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised
that it was so warm 4 October. We went to our hotel and checked in.
Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis
restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city 5 night. We
walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to
our hotel 6 about midnight.

7 Listen. Match the times with the speakers and activities:

استمع - وصل الأوقات مع المتحدثين وأنشطتهم،

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Narrator : 1

Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

Narrator : 2

Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!

Narrator : 3

Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

Dad : Yes, that's right.

Fareed : Ok, thanks Dad .

Narrator : 4

Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

Talia : OK, Mom, I'll be ready.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine, Sherif

Thanks for reminding me.

Narrator : 6

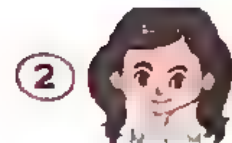
Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.





Ayman



Amira



Fareed



Talia



Sherif



Sara

a- on the weekend

b- at 11 am

c- in the morning

d- on Thursday

e- in July

f- at 5 pm



8

Tell your partner what you do at these times, then write. Use on, in, or at:

قل لزميلك ماذا تفعل في هذه الأوقات ثم اكتب باستخدام at / on / in

- 1- Wednesdays On Wednesdays, I play football after school.
- 2- the afternoon
- 3- summer
- 4- weekend
- 5- January
- 6- 6 pm



Activities



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

تصانح الامتحان



- visit many places in Egypt every year.
☐ a Friends ☐ b Tourists ☐ c Students ☐ d Children
- Tourists always want to check 'n a hotel.
☐ a tall ☐ b small ☐ c comfortable ☐ d high
- Tourists try traditional food.
☐ a Chinese ☐ b American ☐ c Egyptian ☐ d French
- Tourists like to go to Luxor in
☐ a summer ☐ b fall ☐ c winter ☐ d spring



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطارة:

too - special - history - trip - colorful

Yesterday, I went on a school trip. I went to the Egyptian Museum. I love learning about Yesterday was a day. I went by bus. The bus ride wasn't bad. It was a good It was a great day.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للتكوين جملاً:

- visit - you - would - like to - What?
- stop - for lunch - We - on the way - will,
- salt - is - the Dead Sea - There - in - so much.
- football - Ali - Mondays - on - plays,



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Scanned with OKEN Scanner

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We had science lessons (in) Thursdays.
2. Our flight to London landed (on) 9 o'clock.
3. My father went to the hospital (for) midnight.
4. We have a party (in) August 15th.
5. We play basketball (on) lunchtime.
6. They arrived (at) the morning.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. i spent hours in the park
2. how many museums can you visit on this trip

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاها آخر الوحدة

What you go at different times

Guiding phrases

go swimming - enjoy my day

Lesson

3

Al-Azhar Park



Read and listen

استمع إلى المفردات:



go on vacation

يذهب في إجازة

bench

مقعد طويل

a bit low

حزين أو محبط قليلاً

awesome

مذهل



picnic

طعام مخصص للنزهة / نزهة

cousin

ابن - ابنة (العم - العممة / الخال - الخالة)

suddenly

فجأة

past

ماراً به / عابراً

playground

ملعب

grass

عشب / حشائش

together

معاً / سوياً

meal

وجبة

show

عرض (معرض)

beach

شاطئ

year

عام / سنة

whole group

مجموعة كاملة

else

آخر / إضافي



possible

ممکن

cool

لطيف / بارد

interesting

ممتع / شيق

wonderful

مدهش

beautiful

جميل

fantastic

رائع

Conjugation of verbs - تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

phone يتصل هاتفياً

phoned

come يأتي

came

agree يوافق

agreed

sit يجلس

sat

shout يصيح

shouted

find يجد

found

arrive يصل

arrived

think يعتقد

thought

seem يبدو

seemed

know يعرف

knew



Study the following

- 1 It was a hot summer. - كان صيفًا حارًا.
- 2 School was over and he wanted to go on vacation. - الدراسة انتهت وأراد (سليم) أن يذهب في إجازة.
- 3 His cousin Sherif was away at the beach. - ابن عمه شريف كان بعيدًا بالشاطئ.
- 4 His family usually went on vacation. - عادة ما تذهب عائلته في إجازة.
- 5 They had to stay in Cairo. - كان يجب عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.
- 6 I'm feeling a bit low. - أشعر بالحزن قليلًا.
- 7 I want to be at the beach. - أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ.
- 8 Can you come to the playground with us? - هل من الممكن أن تأتي معنا إلى الملعب؟
- 9 Why are you in the city? - لماذا أنت في المدينة؟
- 10 Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. - جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في المتنزه.
- 11 I think this is a fantastic place. - أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.
- 12 I can see there's a show next week. - أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع القادم.
- 13 It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome! - بدا أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة كان رائعًا.

1 Listen and read the story. Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

استمع وأقرأ القصة. لماذا شعر سليم بأنه آخر القصة؟

استمع إلى النص



Tapescript



نص الاستماع

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation⁽¹⁾. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible⁽²⁾ - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay⁽³⁾ in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?" "I'm feeling a bit low⁽⁴⁾ - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem. "Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."



Arabic Meaning

- ١- يذهب في إجازة
- ٢- ممكن
- ٣- بقيم/ يبقى
- ٤- حزين قليلًا

Unit 11

"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it **sounds**⁽⁵⁾ interesting!" Seleem's mom **agreed**⁽⁶⁾ to take them to the park. She made a **picnic**⁽⁷⁾, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green **grass**⁽⁸⁾ and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I **thought**⁽⁹⁾ you were at the beach!"

"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a **whole group**⁽¹⁰⁾ of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the **playground**⁽¹¹⁾ with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went **together**⁽¹²⁾ to the playground. Mom sat on a **bench**⁽¹³⁾ and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon.

"I can see there's a show next week. Let's **come back**⁽¹⁴⁾ with Dad, see the show, and have a **meal**⁽¹⁵⁾ at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It **seemed**⁽¹⁶⁾ that summer in the city would be **awesome**⁽¹⁷⁾!

- ٥- يبدو
- ٦- وافق
- ٧- طعام النزهة
- ٨- عشب
- ٩- اعتقد
- ١٠- مجموعة كاملة
- ١١- ملعب/فناء
- ١٢- معًا
- ١٣- مقعد طويل
- ١٤- يعود
- ١٥- وجبة
- ١٦- بها
- ١٧- مذهل

2 Read again and circle the correct answer:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Seleem wasn't at school because

☐ a he was ill.

☐ b he was on vacation.

2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?

☐ a Because his grandma was ill.

☐ b Because his dad had a new job.

3- Where did they eat in the park?

☐ a on the grass

☐ b at the restaurant

4- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?

☐ a friends from school

☐ b Sherif, Seleem's cousin

5- What did Seleem and his mom decide to do the following week?

☐ a come back with Seleem's friends

☐ b come back with Seleem's dad

3 Think and say:

فكر وقل:

From what you have read in the story about Al-Azhar Park, would you like to spend a day there?

☐ a Yes? Tell your partner what things you would like to do in Al-Azhar Park and why.

☐ b No? Tell your partner what you would prefer to do that you can't do in Al-Azhar Park.





Pronunciation

- سوف تتعرف في هذا الدرس على الفرق بين الأصوات /θ/ و /ð/ (th sounds). لنطق حرفي (th) والرمز الصوتي الدال عليها.

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

- لكي تنطق هذه الأصوات يجب أن تضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العليا.
- هذا الصوت /θ/ يشبه حرف (ث) في اللغة العربية وهو صوت لا تهتز به الأحبال الصوتية وهذا معناه أنك تشعر بهواء على يدك إذا قربتها من فمك عند خروج هذا الصوت.
- أما الصوت /ð/ يشبه حرف (ذ) في اللغة العربية ولا يوجد هواء عند خروجه ولكن تشعر باهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية.

1. Listen and say these words: استمع وقل هذه الكلمات،

/θ/	/ð/
thing شئ	these هؤلاء
Thursday يوم الخميس	those أولئك
think يعتقد	this هذا
three ثلاثة	with مع
Earth الأرض	mother أم
author مؤلف	

2. Say these words. Add them to the correct column in Exercise 1. Then listen and check:

قل هذه الكلمات. ضفهم في الجدول الآتي حسب نطق حرفي (th) كما بالأمثال،

bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - clothes - mouth - leather

th /θ/	th /ð/
bathroom	father

3 Look and write. Add the correct suffix to the words in brackets:

انظر واكتب. أضف النهاية الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين القوسين.

هناك بعض النهايات الشائعة التي تضاف للكلمات لتكوين الصفة مثل النهايات (ive / ous) في الجدول الآتي.

Word origin	أصل الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
poison	سم	poisonous	سام
act	يتحرك	active	نشط
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
expense	تكلفة	expensive	غالي الثمن
enormity	ضخامة / كبر	enormous	ضخم

- 1- Be careful! That snake is (poison)
- 2- Ali swims and runs. He's very (act)
- 3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very (fame)
- 4- His watch is very (expense)



Math

Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles. Let's learn more about triangles below.

- يأتي الكثير من السياح ليزوروا مصر وواحدة من أكثر الأماكن شهرة هي أهرامات الجيزة. كل جوانبها عبارة عن مثلثات.

- هيا نتعلم المزيد عن المثلثات بالأسفل.

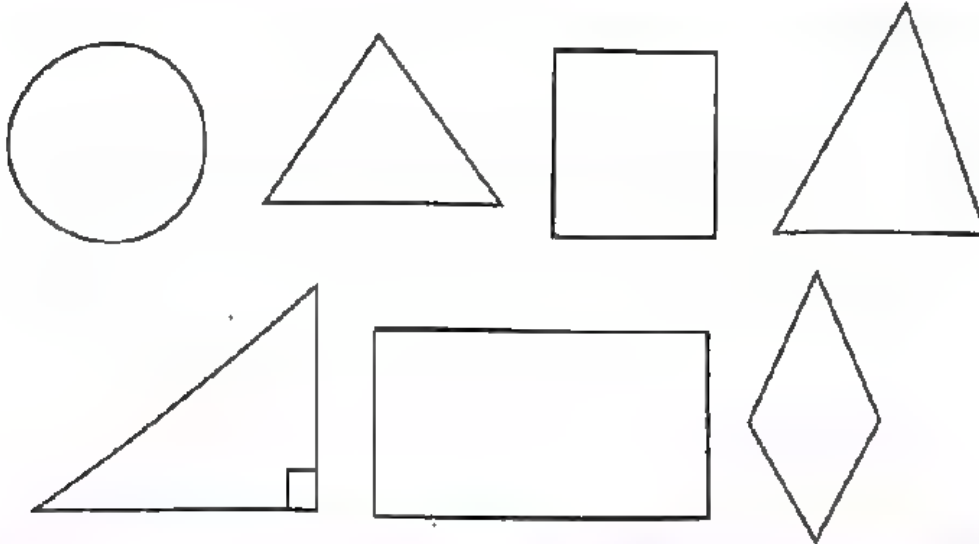
An equilateral triangle		مثلث متساوي الأضلاع (أضلاعه الثلاثة متساوية)
A right angle triangle		مثلث قائم الزاوية (به زاوية قائمة 90°)
An isosceles triangle		مثلث متساوي الساقين (به ضلعين متساويين)
A scalene triangle		مثلث مختلف الأضلاع (كل أضلاعه مختلفة في القياس)

1 Look and read. Color the triangles:

انظر واقرأ ولون المثلثات.

A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد ذو ثلاثة أضلاع.



2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل.

1- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.



2- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90° .



3- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.



4- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.



3 Look. Circle the correct triangle type:

انظر وضع دائرة حول النوع الصحيح للمثلث.



1 right angle /
scalene



2 isosceles /
equilateral



3 right angle
/ isosceles



4 equilateral /
scalene

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hani can do a lot of activities on

- ☐ a vacation ☐ b buildings ☐ c parks ☐ d roofs

2. Hani goes to Alexandria in

- ☐ a winter ☐ b fall ☐ c summer ☐ d spring

3. They stay in a in front of the sea.

- ☐ a beach ☐ b hotel ☐ c house ☐ d park

4. They make sandcastles on the

- ☐ a road ☐ b street ☐ c beach ☐ d hotel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hana sat on a in the park. She enjoyed the beautiful plants.

- ☐ a bench ☐ b city ☐ c school ☐ d hotel

2. She went to the park, she a picnic.

- ☐ a did ☐ b played ☐ c made ☐ d stayed

3. Everyone knows Adel. He is very

- ☐ a active ☐ b famous ☐ c expensive ☐ d poisonous

4. It was a wonderful city. It was

- ☐ a bad ☐ b ugly ☐ c awesome ☐ d sad

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للتكوين جملًا:

1. you - are - in - the - Why - city?

2. to - Park - go - Al-Azhar - Let's

3. wanted - Hadi - to - vacation - on - go

4. thought - I - were - the beach - you - on

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- seleem felt very happy

2- can you come to the park with us



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Morocco	المغرب
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش (المغرب)
France	فرنسا
Paris	مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا)
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل (باريس)
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)

French	اللغة الفرنسية / شخص فرنسي
sights	معالم سياحة
race	يسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
diary	مفكرة يومية



museum	متحف
formal language	اللغة الرسمية
local dishes	أكلات شعبية
chef	طاه / طباط
perhaps	ربما
a bit	قليلاً
At the end of ...	في نهاية ...
shopping	التسوق
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stall	كشك

sand dunes	كثبان رملية
metal	معدن
smell	رائحة
snorkeling	الغطس
turtles	سلاحف
still	مازال
home	وطن / موطن
wandering	التجول
trip	رحلة قصيرة

Adjectives

صفات

perfect	رائع
hungry	جائع
special	مميز / خاص
traditional	تقليدي

crowded / busy	مزدحم
private	خاص
brightly-colored	ذو ألوان زاهية
cultural	حضاري / ثقافي

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

try	يحاول	tried
wait	يتظر	waited
visit	يزور	visited
remind	يذكر	reminded
include	يشمل	included

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

understand	يفهم	understood
speak	يتكلم	spoke
keep up	يجاري	kept up

Study the following

- 1 We saw some famous sights from the boat.

- رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية المشهورة من القارب.

- 2 The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.

- برج آيفل طويل جدا ومصنوع من المعدن.

- 3 The Louvre is a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings.

- اللوفر هو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة.

- 4 The French people were very kind.

- كان الفرنسيون طيبون جدا.

- 5 When I spoke English, they understood me!

- عندما تحدثت باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني.

- 6 At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant.

- في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم للأكلات الفرنسية.

- 7 There's so much to do.

- يوجد أشياء كثيرة لتفعلها.

- 8 Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum.

- ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف (متحف جميل).

- 9 I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home.

- أحبها لأنها تذكرني قليلا بحديقة الأزهر في وطني (بلدي مصر).

- 10 The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

- الروائح الآتية من الأكشاك الموجودة بالسوق جعلتني جائع.

- 11 We go to the beach to go snorkeling. - نذهب للشاطئ لكي نمارس رياضة الغطس.
- 12 We race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! - نتمسّق عبر الكثبان الرملية بالعربات الشاطئية.
- 13 Can you keep up? - هل تستطيع أن تجاري (السياق)؟
- 14 Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. - تعلم عن حضارة المدينة في الماضي من خلال رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.
- 15 You can see the chef making the local dishes. - يمكنك أن ترى الطاهي (الطباخ) يُعدّ الأكلات الشعبية.



Writing a diary

When you write a diary, you should... عندما تكتب مفكرة يومية ينبغي أن

Write the date. تكتب تاريخ اليوم.

Start with "Dear Diary". تبدأ بـ: مذكراتي العزيزة.

Describe the places / events. تصف الأماكن والأحداث.

Say how you felt. تقول ما شعرت به.

11 Read the diary entries. Match the people to the places

اقرأ التدوينات اليومية. صل الناس بالأماكن.



1 Marrakech, Morocco



2 Eiffel Tower, Paris, France

July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights⁽¹⁾ from the boat, like the Louvre⁽²⁾, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings⁽³⁾, and the Eiffel Tower⁽⁴⁾. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal⁽⁵⁾. I tried to speak French⁽⁶⁾, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood⁽⁷⁾ me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Arabic Meaning

- 1- معالم سياحية
- 2- متحف اللوفر
- 3- لوحات
- 4- برج آيفل
- 5- معدن
- 6- اللغة الفرنسية
- 7- فهم

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Abdun's House and to the museum that is 800 years old! We saw many things and the city is still⁽¹⁾ very busy⁽²⁾ with people. We also went to Jardin Majorelle⁽³⁾, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I love it because it reminds⁽⁴⁾ me a bit of Al-Azhar Park. After that, we went to Jemaa el-Fnaa⁽⁵⁾, the market⁽⁶⁾. The smells⁽⁷⁾ from the market stalls⁽⁸⁾ make me hungry. I can't wait⁽⁹⁾ to go back there tomorrow!

Arabic Meaning

- 1- مازال
- 2- مزدحم
- 3- حديقة ماحوريل بالمغرب
- 4- يذكر
- 5- جامع الفنا
- 6- سوق
- 7- روائح
- 8- أكشاك
- 9- ينتظر



Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينه اليومية جديدة.

2 Read. Check (✓) the statements that apply

اقرأ. ضع (✓) أمام ما يتم تنفيذه من الجمل عند كتابة تدوينه اليومية.

When writing a diary:

- 1- you should start with "Dear Diary".
- 2- you should write about how you felt
- 3- you should use formal language.
- 4- you need to remember that other people will read it.
- 5- you should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".



3 Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة،

Read the two diary entries again. Who ...

اقرأ التدوينتين اليومية مرة أخرى. اختر «ريم» أو «أميرة».

1- went on a boat?	Reem	Amira
2- thought somewhere was very crowded?	Reem	Amira
3- went somewhere that was like a place at home?	Reem	Amira
4- saw something beautiful made of metal?	Reem	Amira
5- said that the smell of the food made them hungry?	Reem	Amira
6- ate something made of potatoes for dinner?	Reem	Amira

4

Think of a day when you did something special. Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words:

فكر في يوم عندما فعلت شيئاً مميزاً. اكتب تدوينه يومية من حوالي ٣٠ - ٤٠ كلمة:

Remember:

- ☐ Write the date.
- ☐ Start with "Dear Diary".
- ☐ Describe the places / events.
- ☐ Say how you felt.

Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private. However, do you think it's right to read the diaries of people from the past? Why? Why not?

يجب عليك ألا تقرأ يوميات الآخرين، لأن هذه اليوميات خاصة بهم ولكن هل من الصحيح أن تقرأ اليوميات الخاصة بالآخرين من الماضي؟ هل رأيك لا ولا لا؟

5 Read. Do you want to go on this vacation? Why? / Why not?

اقرأ. هل تريد أن تذهب في أجازة؟ لماذا؟ / لماذا لا؟

My perfect vacation.

استمع إلى النصوص.



Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go **snorkeling**⁽¹⁾. Swim with the **turtles**⁽²⁾ and **brightly-colored**⁽³⁾ fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a **picnic**⁽⁴⁾ and a good book.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- يذهب للسباحة
- ٢- سلاحف
- ٣- زاهي / ذات ألوان زاهية
- ٤- طعام للغزاة

Day 2

Today we **race**⁽⁵⁾ through the sand dunes in **beach buggies**⁽⁶⁾! It's fun and fast! Can you **keep up**⁽⁷⁾?



Arabic Meaning

- ٥- يتسابق
- ٦- عربات شاطئية
- ٧- يواصل

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and **wandering through**⁽⁸⁾ the markets. **Perhaps**⁽⁹⁾ buy some traditional **handcrafts**⁽¹⁰⁾ to take home.



Arabic Meaning

- ٨- التجول عبر
- ٩- ربما
- ١٠- مصنوعات يدوية

Day 4

Learn about the city's **cultural**⁽¹¹⁾ past with a **trip**⁽¹²⁾ to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the **local dishes**⁽¹³⁾.



Arabic Meaning

- ١١- ثقافي
- ١٢- رحلة قصيرة
- ١٣- أطباق شعبية



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We go to the beach to go

- ☐ a snorkeling ☐ b shopping ☐ c sleeping ☐ d wandering

2. Eiffel Tower is made of

- ☐ a wood ☐ b metal ☐ c plastic ☐ d glass

3. We will race today. Can you up?

- ☐ a make ☐ b walk ☐ c keep ☐ d swim

4. The smells coming from my mother's cooking make me

- ☐ a private ☐ b hungry ☐ c kind ☐ d busy

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Walid. I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I want to go to the Cairo Tower. It is so tall and made of metal. I want to go to the Egyptian Museum. I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. It has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I can't wait to go there soon!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo Tower is made of

- ☐ a carton ☐ b paper ☐ c mud ☐ d metal

2. The underlined word "It" refers to

- ☐ a Cairo ☐ b the Cairo Tower ☐ c Egyptian Museum ☐ d Al-Azhar Park

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Walid want to have?

4. Where will Walid learn about Egypt in the past?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جملاً:

1. the - on - went - I - river.
2. you - Can - up - keep?
3. some - saw - sights - famous - Magda
4. metal - Eiffel - The - made of - is - Tower.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (have) such a cool day yesterday.
2. Be careful! That snake is (poison).
3. Everyone knows Soha. She is very (fame).
4. Reem's birthday is (at) January 4th.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

- 1- The french people were very kind
- 2- do you want to go on vacation

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

A race through the sand

sand dunes - beach buggies



Review

Key vocabulary



hotel

فندق



swimming pool

حمام سباحة



high-rise building

ناطحة سحاب



theme park

ملاهي



ticket

تذكرة



museum

متحف



airport

مطار



tourist

سائح



passport

جواز سفر

traditional

تقليدي

day trip

رحلة في وقت النهار

diary

مفكرة يومية

go on vacation

يذهب في إجازة

a bit low

حزين قليلا

diary entry

تدوينة يومية

wander

يتجول

handicrafts

مصنوعات يدوية

stalls

أكشاك

bench

مقعد طويل

awesome

مذهل

sights

معالم سياحية

race

يسابق

beach buggies

عربات شاطئية

paintings

لوحات

Morocco

دولة المغرب

Eiffel Tower

برج آيفل

the Louvre

متحف اللوفر (باريس)

الفرصة / الحظ



luckily

لحسن الحظ

flight

رحلة جوية

vacation

إجازة / عطلة

footprints

آثار القدم

banks

ضفاف

leaflet

منشور

tour

جولة

chance

فرصة

destination

جهة الوصول

mud

وحل / طين

exploring

استكشاف

trading center

مركز تجاري

citadel

قلعة

suddenly

فجأة

Conjugation of verbs

انصريف الافعال

Regular verbs

الافعال المنتظمة

Irregular verbs

افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

relax	يستريح	relaxed
harvest	يحصد	harvested
check in	يسجل وصول	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول حول	walked around
discover	يكشف	discovered

spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time

حروف لجر الخاصة بالوقت

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة.

- I don't go to a school **on** Fridays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6th, 2010.

1

on

نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض المياعات:

- The train to Aswan leaves **at** 8 pm. / **at** lunchtime / night / midnight

2

at

نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنين وأيضاً أوقات اليوم:

- My birthday is **in** June. - I was born **in** 2010.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

3

in

لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11th.



Pronunciation

⊙ لاحظ الفرق بين الأصوات /θ/ و /ð/:

The sounds /θ/		The sounds /ð/	
thing	شئ	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 2

What you do at different times

- 1 On Thursdays, I can do my things at different times. I go swimming at seven am. I always take my swimming shorts. I go to the park at twelve am. Then, I go to the museum at two o'clock. I enjoy my day.
-

Lessons 4&5

A race through the sand

- 2 I like racing through the sand dunes in beach buggies. It's fun and fast. I go with my friends. It's exciting and safe. I go there every week. I enjoy my time there. This is my perfect vacation.
-

Activity & Unit 11

Things to do on vacation

- 3 On vacations, I learn new things. My father took us to the Egyptian Museum. We saw fantastic statues there. The statues are made of gold or rocks. We knew many things and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there again.
-



A- Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختار:

1. Ali is a (doctor - farmer - teacher)
2. Ali grows (grapes - vegetables - bananas)
3. Ali grows vegetables and keeps (animals - birds - bees)

B- Language Functions

Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

snorkeling - sandcastles - would - beach

- A: Where you like to go?
- B: I want to go to the
- A: Do you want to go ?
- B: Yes. I want to make , too.

C- Reading Comprehension

Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Hamza visited the zoo last weekend. He went with his family by bus. He saw a lot of animals there. He fed the elephant and the giraffe. He took photos with them. He liked his vacation.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Hamza go last weekend?

2. How did Hamza go to the zoo?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Hamza fed the ----- and the giraffe. (lion - elephant - deer)
4. Hamza took ----- with the elephant and the giraffe. (carrots - lakes - photos)
5. Hamza liked his ----- (football - vacation - school)

D- Vocabulary and Structures**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة**

1. My birthday is ----- Monday.
 a in b on c at
2. I put my clothes in a -----
 a museum b suitcase c picnic
3. This watch is very -----
 a active b expensive c creative
4. My family wanted to go on -----
 a suitcase b vacation c passport
5. I get up ----- 7 am.
 a in b on c at

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. feeling - bit - I'm - low - a.

2. suitcase - She's - her - packing.

3. perfect - This - my - vacation.

4. fly - When - they - from - did - Cairo?

5. go - swimming - at - I - o'clock - seven.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ramy and Adam are

- ☐ a brothers ☐ b cousins ☐ c students ☐ d friends

2. Ramy and Adam are in primary

- ☐ a 5 ☐ b 4 ☐ c 6 ☐ d 3

3. Ramy likes playing football after school on

- ☐ a Monday ☐ b Thursday ☐ c Saturday ☐ d Wednesday

4. Adam goes on Friday.

- ☐ a cycling ☐ b swimming ☐ c shopping ☐ d sleeping

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need a to travel to different countries.

- ☐ a basket ☐ b ride ☐ c passport ☐ d pool

2. Mom sat on a in Al-Azhar Park.

- ☐ a bench ☐ b beach ☐ c ticket ☐ d flight

3. We through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

- ☐ a race ☐ b relax ☐ c find ☐ d put

4. You can have fun and go on different rides at the

- ☐ a sand dunes ☐ b theme park ☐ c museum ☐ d airport

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

checked - warm - landed - degrees - traditional

Last year, we visited Amman. We went there by plane. The plane ① at 4 o'clock. It was about 26 ② and I was surprised that it was ③ in October. We went to our hotel and ④ in. It was a comfortable hotel.



ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Reda. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most famous botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The Spring Festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

- The Spring Festival usually starts in
☐ a July ☐ b March ☐ c May ☐ d June
- Reda will have a vacation.
☐ a bad ☐ b useless ☐ c boring ☐ d good

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does Reda want?
- Where is the Orman Garden located?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

- does - When - land - flight - our?
- snorkeling - We - going - the weekend - on - are.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Amman is a really busy (on) night.
- I was born (in) August 15th.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

did you visit Al-Azhar Park at night

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجايب آخر الوحدة

Things to do on vacation

Guiding phrases

Egyptian museum - fantastic statues

Unit 12

Fiction Reader



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. To read and understand a story. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
2. To enjoy reading in English. ٢ - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
3. To identify characters in a story. ٣ - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات قصة.
4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. ٤ - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والمفردات في قصة.
5. To review the story and check understanding. ٥ - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمها.
6. To put events from a story in order. ٦ - يترتيب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
7. To examine the characters in a story. ٧ - يلاحظ الطالب على شخصيات القصة.
8. To retell the story. ٨ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.

Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة



Dad

الأب



Mom

الأم



Ramy

رامي



Malak

ملك



Grandpa

الجد



Grandma

الجدّة



Uncle Youssef

العم يوسف

Picture Dictionary

قاموس الصور

استمع إلى المفردات والنصوص



dinosaur الديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



skeleton هيكل عظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

تمتلك الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي داخل أجسادهما.



bones العظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

جسمنا به عظاماً عديدة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



tracks آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثاراً على الأرض التي ساروا عليها.



binoculars المنظار
نظارة مكبرة / معظمة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب النظر إلى الأشياء البعيدة بالمنظار الخاص بها.



ibex الوعل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعل هو حيوان صحراوي مثل الغزال.



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض للعثور على أشياء من سنوات عديدة ويدرسها.



archaeological dig حفر آثري

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

يتشيء الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس معاً للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.

The Reader

القصة

استمع الى نص القصة



Ramy and Malak are playing in the **garden**⁽¹⁾. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the **newspaper**⁽²⁾!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something **amazing**⁽³⁾ near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

يلعب رامي وملاك في الحديقة. فجأة ينادي عليهم والداهم من المنزل.

"يا أولاد ، تعالوا وساعدوا هذه القصة في الحريدة!"

يركض الأولاد الى الداخل ليروا. يقول والداهم "انظروا. لقد وجدوا شيئا رائعا بالقرب من قرية جدكم وجدكم."

"What is it. Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks **scary**⁽⁴⁾!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the **skeleton**⁽⁵⁾ of a **dinosaur**⁽⁶⁾."

A group of **archaeologists**⁽⁷⁾ found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يسأل رامي "ما هذا يا أبي؟ انه يبدو مخيفاً!"

يقول الاب "لا يا رامي، انه ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق. انه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحد من هؤلاء."

1-garden	2-see	3-newspaper	4-scary	5-skeleton	6-dinosaur	7-archaeologists
حديقة	فناء	جريدة	مخيف	هيكل عظمي	ديناصور	علماء آثار

2



That's **awesome⁽¹⁾**, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"

"Yes, that's right, Malak "says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"

"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really **interesting⁽²⁾** job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.

"Yes, he has. And his work is **important⁽³⁾** too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك "هذا رائع يا ابي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الاب "نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك. يصل عمره الى حوالي ٩٨ مليون عام!"

يقول رامي "رائع! يعمل العم يوسف في وظيفة ممتعة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول - ب - نعم ، هو كذلك . وعمله مهم ايضا . انه يساعدنا في التعرف على لماضي .

1- awesome

رائع

2- interesting

شيق

3 important

مهم

A Family in Desert Adventure



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يتناول رامى وعائلته العشاء

يقول الأب "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتك في المرة القادمة؟"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an **adventure⁽¹⁾** to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful **nature trail⁽²⁾** there. Why don't we walk that together?"

"Oh yes please. Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

يقول رامى "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة"

تقول الامم "يوجد ممشى (درب) طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير فيه معاً؟"

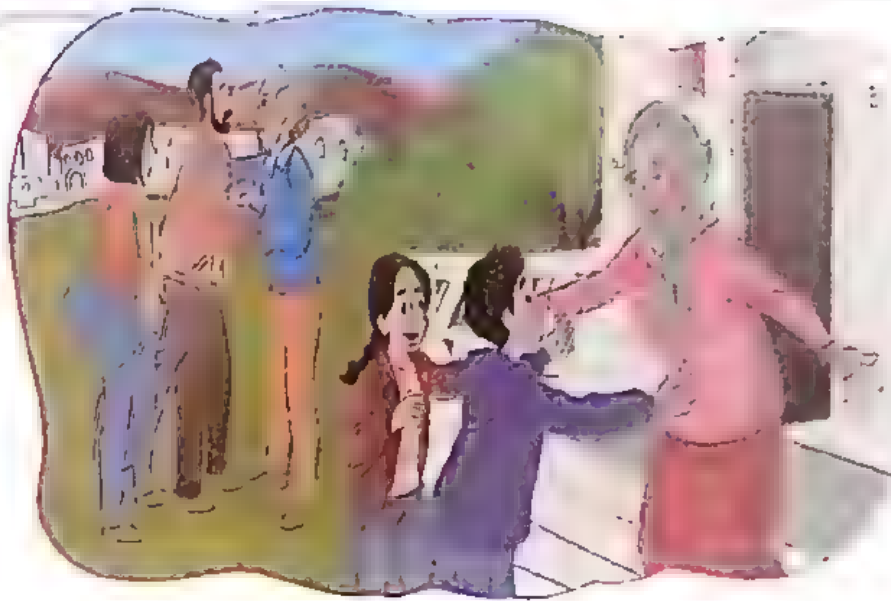
تقول ملك "نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أحب الطبيعة."

1- adventure

مغامرة

2- nature trail

مشى (درب) طبيعي



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so **excited**⁽¹⁾ to see her **grandchildren**⁽²⁾.

"I have prepared your favorite things - **feteer**⁽³⁾ and **mint tea**⁽⁴⁾. Come inside and eat."

ننادي الجد "رامي! ملك!" ابنا متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها.

"أعددت أشيائكم المفضلة - فطير وشاي بالنعناع. تعالوا إلى الداخل وتناولوا لطعام."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

يقول الجد لامي وأبي "مرحباً. إنه من الجيد رؤيتكم."

يقول أبي "من الرائع أن نكون هنا. نريد عذا أن نأخذ الأولاد إلى الممشى (الحرب) الطبيعي."

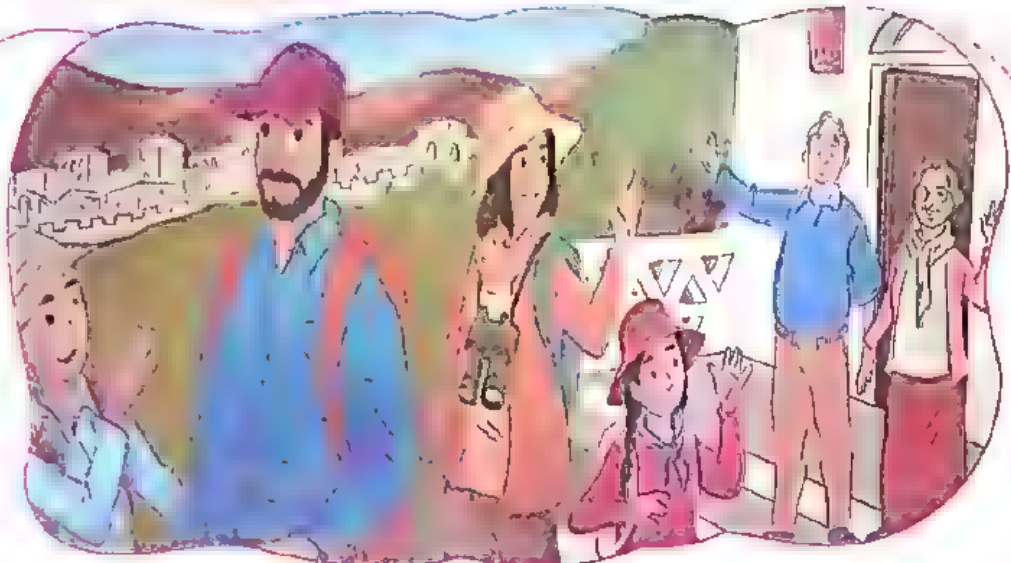
"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

يقول الجد "ممتاز. هناك الكثير لنروه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

شاي بالنعناع 1- excited 2- grandchildren 3- feteer 4- فطير | أحفاد | متحمس/استرور

A Fantastic Family Adventure

5



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses.

في صباح اليوم التالي الجميع سعداء. انهم مستعدون للسير في الممشى (جرب) الطقس. انهم يرتدون القبعات والوشحة ونظارات الشمس.

They have snacks and water in their **backpacks**⁽¹⁾. Mom has some **binoculars**⁽²⁾ too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare**⁽³⁾ animals.

لديهم وجبات خفيفة وماء في حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمي لديها منظار (بصارة كبيرة) أيضا. إنها تريد ان تنظر إلى الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في جزء جميل من مصر حيث يحتوي على العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.

1- backpacks

حقائب ظهر

2- binoculars

منظار (نظارة كبيرة)

3- rare

نادر





It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus⁽²⁾ plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

اليوم جميل ودافئ، ليس شديد الحرارة، إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. يوجد نباتات الصبار والتمر وهم يشاهدون شترى وحمير.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone." she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox⁽³⁾, or a dorcas gazelle⁽⁴⁾, or maybe a sand cat."

ملوك سعيدة جداً لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول: "يرجى أن يمشي الجميع بهدوء وباحتياظ. عندما نكون هادئين، يمكننا مشاهدة ثعلب نمط أو غزال دوركاس أو ربما قط الرمال."

The family continue along the trail. Rami sees animals' tracks⁽⁵⁾ in the sand.

Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

الأسرة تستمر في المشي على المسار. رامي يرى آثار الحيوانات في الرمال. الجميع يستمتع بالمشي.

1- perfect	مثالي	2- cactus	نبات الصبار	3- fennec fox	ثعلب النمط
4- dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس	5- tracks	آثار أقدام		

7



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone. I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"

She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

ثم تقول الام: "مرحباً بالجميع. لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟"
تجلس الام. البقية يشربون بعض الماء، ينتظرون. رامي ينظر الى بعض الاشكال الغريبة
الطريق. يرى بعض الاشكال الغريبة بداخلها.

"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones⁽¹⁾..."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

"يقول رامي: انظر! ما هذه الاشياء في الصخور يا ابي؟"
يقول الاب: لا اعرف. تبدو مثل العظام."
تقول الام: نحن قريبون جداً من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه هيكل الديناصور. ربما تكون عظام ديناصور."

Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course," says Dad.

Uncle Youssef is very interested⁽²⁾ in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs⁽³⁾ of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

رامي متحمس جداً ويقول: لنسأل اعم يوسف! هل يمكن ان نتصل به يا ابي؟"
يقول الاب: نعم بالطبع."
العم يوسف مهتم جداً بالصخور التي وجدها رامي. يخبر ابي ان يلتقط بعض الصور لهم وان يلتقي به في منزل جدتي على الغداء."

1- bones

عظام

2- interested

مهتم بـ

3- photographs

صور فوتوغرافية

8



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، يعرض أبي الصور على العم يوسف، ويوضح له رامي المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه هناك في اليوم التالي.

9



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

في اليوم التالي يعودون على امتداد المسار. يعثرون على صخور رمي ويظهر عمه يوسف أنهم قديمون.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are **certainly**⁽¹⁾ very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that **doesn't exist**⁽²⁾ now."

يقول العم يوسف: "لا توجد عظام ديناصور في الصخور لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما هي عظام نوع قديم من أنواع الوعل والغزل والعنبر الموجود الآن."

Ramy is **disappointed**⁽³⁾ because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يخيب رامي لأنه لم يجد عظام ديناصور، لكن العم يوسف يقول: "أحسنت يا رامي! لقد وجدتهم! من المهم أن تأخذ وقتك للنظر في العالم من حولك ومراقبة الأشياء - تمامًا مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل تريدون جميعًا أن تأتيوا إلى الحفرة لترى هيكل العظمي للديناصور الذي وجدته؟" يقول رامي وملاك: "نعم، يا عمي يوسف!"

1- certainly

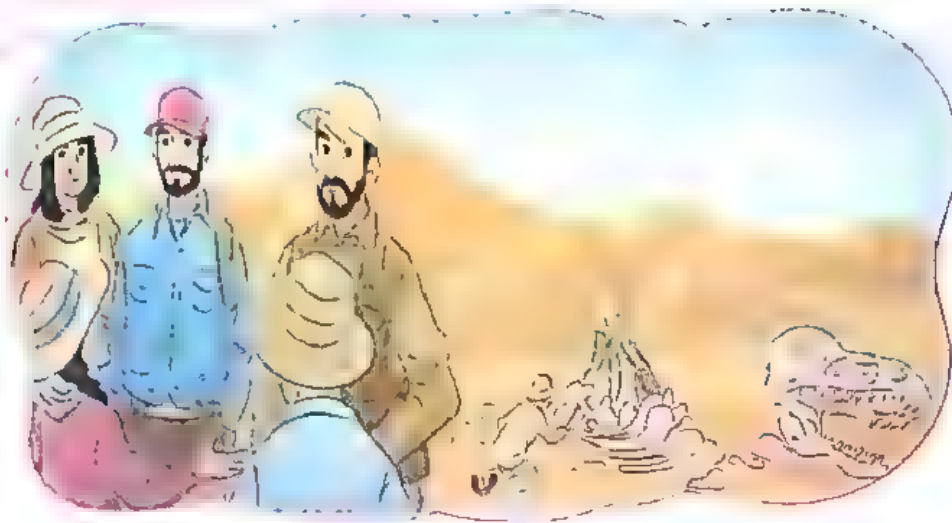
بالتأكيد

2- doesn't exist

لا يوجد

3- disappointed

محبط



"Here it is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"

"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."

"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time," says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of **climate change**⁽¹⁾," says Uncle Youssef.

يقول العم يوسف "ه هو، ما رأيكم؟"
يقول رامي "رائع! إنه لأمر مذهش أن نتجسس انه عاش منذ ملايين السنين
تقول ملك "وان عظامه كانت تحت الارض لمثل هذه المدة الطويلة،
يقول العم يوسف "في الواقع، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ."

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is **dry**⁽²⁾ and the wind can **blow**⁽³⁾ away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the **surface**⁽⁴⁾. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the **plants**⁽⁵⁾."

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة والرياح يمكن أن تهب بعيداً الرمال. الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تظهر على السطح. هذا جيد للباحثين في الآثار، لكنه سيء للنباتات."

3- blow	جاف	تغير المناخ
4- surface	كوكب	سطح



"Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy"

"It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!."

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل.

يقول رامي "شكراً للسماع برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف، لقد كان شيقاً للغاية، أريد أن أصبح عالم آثار. ياله من عمل رائع!"

"It's **fascinating**⁽¹⁾ work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef. "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

يقول العم يوسف "انه عمل رائع، لكنه شاق". "في بعض الأحيان نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً". تقول ملك "يحبصا المساعدة ذاكنت نبحث عن ديناصورات اخرى"

"Thanks for all the **delicious**⁽²⁾ food," says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

يقول الامم "شكراً على كل الطعام اللذيذ، كان من الرائع ان اراكما مرة اخرى."

يقول الجدة "شكراً لك عزيزتي، تعالى لزيارتنا قريباً."

1- fascinating

رائع

2- delicious

لذيذ

A Fantastic Family Adventure

12



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

تسأل أمهم: "هل استمتعتم برحلتنا؟"

يشرحون: "نعم، اعتقدتها رائعة" يقول ملك "وانا أيضاً"

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment⁽¹⁾."

"Yes, that is how you can discover⁽²⁾ interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

يسأل الأب: "ماذا تعلمتم منها في رأيكما؟"

يقول رامى: "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية ونلاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا."

تضيف ملك: "نعم، هذا هو الطريق لاكتشاف الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام."

يقول الأب: "أنتم على حق يا أولاد، أحسنتم!"

1- environment

2- discover البيئة

اكتشف

1 Label the people with the names in the box:

اكتب أسماء الشخصيات من القائمة تحت الصور:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1



2



3



4



5



6



7

2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F).
Correct the false sentences in your notebook

اقرأ. قرر إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ:

1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. (F)

Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.

2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. ()

3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. ()

4. Mom loves looking at birds. ()

5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ()

6. They go to Uncle Youssef's office. ()



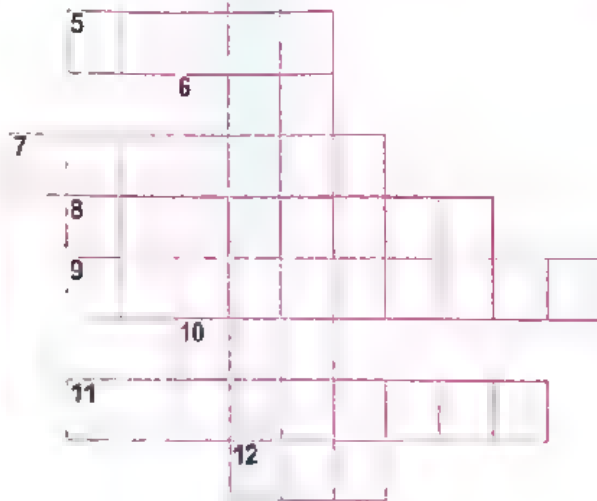
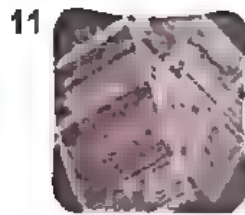
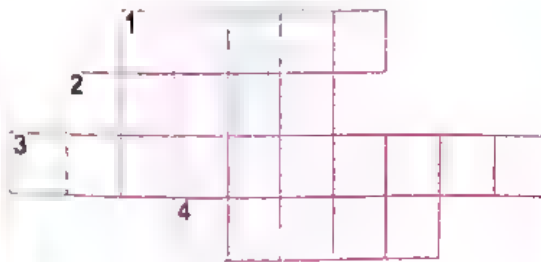
A Fantastic Family Adventure

8 Complete the puzzle with words from the story. What's the word in yellow?

أكمل اللغز بكلمات من القصة. ما هي الكلمة باللون الأصفر؟



mint.....



fennec



archaeological



dorcas



1 Look and number in order:

أنظر ورقم بالترتيب:



2 Read and match to make sentences:

اقرأ وصل للتكوين جمل:

- A
- 1 Dad reads a story
 - 2 The children's grandparents
 - 3 Romy finds old bones
 - 4 Uncle Youssef invites
 - 5 Romy wants to be

- B
- a live near the archaeological dig.
 - b the family to the dig.
 - c about a dinosaur in the newspaper
 - d an archaeologist in the future.
 - e in some rocks near the trail.

A Fantastic Family Adventure

- Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 1 and using your answers to Exercise 2. What is your favorite scene? Why?

عمل مع زميلك. أعد سرد لقصة بالنظر إلى الصور في التمرين 1 واستخدام الإجابات في التمرين 2. ما هو مشهدك المفضل؟ لماذا؟

- Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل ملخص القصة بالكلمات في القائمة:

ibex - rocks - next - trail - Invites - dig - fun - Dad -

skeleton - Grandma

At home, **Dad** reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur **2** He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological **3** At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they visit **4**, who lives near the dig. The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the **5** day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the **6** and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an **7** He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of **8**

- Work with a partner. Discuss the questions:

إعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة:

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
2. What information can archaeology give us?
3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?

Review

4

Objectives of Review 4

اهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد النحوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To evaluate progress in Units 10 - 12.

- يتم تقييم مدى فهم الطالب في استيعاب الوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To read postcards and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب بطاقات بريدية ويجيب عن أسئلة.

① Write the missing letters. Listen and check:

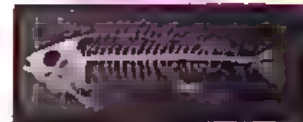
اكتب الحروف الناقصة.



1- di - osa - r



2- pas - p - - t



3- ske - - to -



4- t - ac - s



5- bin - cu - ars



6- s - - tcase



7- ar - hae - - ogist



8- st - t - - n

2 Complete the conversation with the sentences in the box:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الجمل.

Wear your jacket, please,
Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.
Go straight to the end of the road

Conversation 1

Rania: Excuse me, where's the shopping mall, please?

Rabab: _____, and then turn left.

Conversation 2

Basel: It's really cold outside.

Dad: You're right. _____

Conversation 3

Sherif: I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach!

Hazem: _____ We'll have a great time!

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A lot of wonderful paintings / factories are in the museums.

2. Tourists like to see the amazing monuments / beaches in Luxor.

3. We will take a relaxing / fixing boat trip on the River Nile.

4. I like the bad / delicious food my mother usually cooks.

4 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل.

A

1 I will send you another email

2 My brother usually

3 Tourists like to wander

4 Don't make noise

B

a. inside the school library.

b. through the streets of Khan
Al-Khalili.

c. when I arrive in London.

d. does his homework carefully.

Lesson

2

Units 10, 11 & 12

1 Listen and complete with the correct sound:

استمع واكمل بالصوت الصحيح:

1. bo -- room

2. enj

3. wr - l -

4. gr --

5. pl --

6. mo -- er

استمع واكمل بالصوت الصحيح:



2 Read. Match the places (1-3) to the postcards (a-c):

اقرأ. وصل الاماكن (١-٣) بالبطاقات البريدية (a-c):

1. a busy city ☐

2. a desert ☐

3. a village ☐

a. Hi Mogdy,

I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.

Bye!

Ali

b. Hello Rabab,

How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around a fire. (It gets really cold here at night) we sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.

See you next week,

Sahar

c. Hi Ghada,

We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped. There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

See you soon,

Randa



3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة على الكلمات الصحيحة.

1. We flew to Alexandria at / in / on Monday
2. Our flight leaves at / in / on 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city at / in / on the summer.
4. We are going to the park at / in / on the afternoon.
5. Her cousins usually visit her at / in / on July.

4 Check (✓) the sentences are correct. Rewrite the sentences that are incorrect:

ضع (✓) على الجمل الصحيحة. واعد كتابة الجمل الغير صحيحة.

1. I went to ride the train from Cairo Airport. ☐
2. Shahinaz needed a big suitcase to put all her clothes in for the next trip. ☐
3. The hotel we stayed in had large, sunny rooms. ☐
4. I couldn't see the birds in the sky well, so I used my tickets. ☐
5. The library had lots of dinosaur skeletons and bones for us to see. ☐

5 Imagine you are on holiday in one of the places 1-3 in Exercise 2. Write a postcard of 30 words to a friend. Think about:

تخيل أنك في إجازة في أحد الأماكن في التمرين ٢. أكتب بطاقة بريدية من ٣٠ كلمة لصديق.

where you are

how you traveled. . . .

who you are there with

what you did yesterday

why you like the place. . .





Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. I went to in the summer.

- ☐ a Luxor ☐ b Alexandria ☐ c Cairo ☐ d Aswan

2. I stayed in a

- ☐ a house ☐ b park ☐ c hotel ☐ d street

3. I saw a lot of in the hotel.

- ☐ a friends ☐ b tourists ☐ c students ☐ d players

4. I took my swimming suit and

- ☐ a pens ☐ b sunglasses ☐ c umbrellas ☐ d books



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are a lot of in the museum

- ☐ a factories ☐ b beaches ☐ c paintings ☐ d stations

2. I my suitcase yesterday.

- ☐ a baked ☐ b packed ☐ c ate ☐ d played

3. Tourists like to through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.

- ☐ a read ☐ b wander ☐ c fix ☐ d invite

4. Don't make inside the school library.

- ☐ a cakes ☐ b noise ☐ c trips ☐ d paintings



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

cold - sand - tent - fire - stars

I'm Hazem. I go to the desert every year. I usually set up our ①

It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on ② At night, we sit around a

③ It gets really ④ here at night.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

Libraries are important places. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep it clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "it" refers to the
☐ a information ☐ b library ☐ c book ☐ d librarian
- We should be in the library.
☐ a noisy ☐ b amazed ☐ c quiet ☐ d bored

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do we go to the library?
- Who should you ask for help in the library?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- is - from - Who - Alexandria?
- sees - tracks - Ramy - in - animals' - the sand.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

will your next class start at 10 pm

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Is your father's birthday (in) Wednesday?
- (Keeps) quiet in the library.

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding phrases

Is in Cairo - fantastic place

General Tests

امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

إدارة السلام التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle is a/an

- ☐ a doctor ☐ b scientist ☐ c archaeologist ☐ d vet

2 My uncle traveled to for work.

- ☐ a Egypt ☐ b Italy ☐ c Africa ☐ d London

3. My uncle likes doing experiments on in the desert

- ☐ a birds ☐ b animals ☐ c lizards ☐ d dinosaurs

4. The people were very

- ☐ a friendly ☐ b unkind ☐ c nervous ☐ d creative

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We catch the train at the

- ☐ a station ☐ b factory ☐ c library ☐ d post office

2. Always quiet inside the school library.

- ☐ a keep ☐ b do ☐ c tell ☐ d throw

3. Go ahead onto North Road

- ☐ a street ☐ b straight ☐ c stay ☐ d stairs

4. New Alamein is a city on the

- ☐ a desert ☐ b grassland ☐ c beach ☐ d snow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

upside - fridge - hiding - night - dark

I'm doing a project on bats at school. I want to see them, but they were all

① I couldn't see them in the ② They fly at ③

They sleep ④ down on trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Sarah went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Ali was very worried about his friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about Ali's
☐ a parents ☐ b family ☐ c friends ☐ d sisters
- Ali was very about his friends.
☐ a happy ☐ b worried ☐ c unfair ☐ d tired

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where did Ali go yesterday?
- Why did Sarah go to the dentist?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- with - share - I - a room - my - brother.
- drink - water - You - plenty - should - of.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عليه آخر الكتاب)

- Can I (having) some medicine, please?
- We (can't) drive a car, but now we can.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

when did ahmed go to Alexandria?

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

Your new apartment

three bedrooms - living room with a balcony

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اختر الإجابة

- I like eating honey for
☐ a dinner ☐ b lunch ☐ c breakfast ☐ d snack
- Some types of honey can kill
☐ a bacteria ☐ b cuts ☐ c insects ☐ d bees
- Honey helps to heal more quickly.
☐ a wounds ☐ b teeth ☐ c coughs ☐ d fevers
- Don't put honey on your cut
☐ a arm ☐ b knee ☐ c head ☐ d ankle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Ancient Egyptians slept on reed
☐ a mats ☐ b bats ☐ c ovens ☐ d bricks
- I have a pet at home.
☐ a frog ☐ b fan ☐ c ferry ☐ d leaf
- We should get between eight and nine hours of every night.
☐ a sport ☐ b sleep ☐ c diet ☐ d exercise
- Baby kangaroos can sit inside their mom's
☐ a eyes ☐ b ears ☐ c legs ☐ d pouch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

fun - vacation - dive - restaurant - beach

Alexandria is a big city near the sea. I like spending my ① there. My favorite place is the ② I can swim and ③ under the water. It's great to go there and have ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend I went to Cairo to visit my aunt Hoda. She had a new baby called Heba. I went to Luxor Station and took the train at eight o'clock in the morning. The train arrived at Cairo at eleven o'clock. Then, I took a taxi to my aunt's apartment.



2. The new baby is my _____.
- ☒ a daughter ☐ b cousin ☐ c sister ☐ d friend

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence
4. What did you enjoy in Al-Azhar Park?

100

صع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. living - here - Do - you - like?
2. an ibis - and - met - Gabi - a snake.

© 2006 The Authors
Journal compilation © 2006 Blackwell Publishing Ltd

اقرأ الكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بس الأقسام (مجان على آخر الكتاب)

1. Hoda (have) a sore throat last week.
2. My uncle is a very good (read) .

100

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي

what is the matter, Ashraf

Figure 1. The effect of the concentration of the inhibitor on the rate of polymerization of the monomer.

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

11-11-1964

Staying healthy

healthy food - balanced diet

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I went to the countryside to visit my

☐ a aunt☐ b uncle☐ c grandpa☐ d cousin

2. I felt with Noha in the countryside.

☐ a happy☐ b active☐ c bored☐ d pleased

3. I had a/an lunch with Noha.

☐ a delicious☐ b awful☐ c poisonous☐ d unhealthy

4. We watched TV in the

☐ a morning☐ b evening☐ c afternoon☐ d midnight

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The hospital is a place that treats

☐ a faucets☐ b photos☐ c patients☐ d statues

2. A breeze is a little

☐ a lake☐ b branch☐ c trunk☐ d wind

3. Last year, he couldn't chess, but now he can.

☐ a speak☐ b play☐ c ride☐ d feel

4. My uncle works in a big food in Helwan

☐ a bank☐ b library☐ c factory☐ d museum

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

airport - tickets - suitcase - fly - cycle

My name's Malak. I'm packing my ① I'll ② to Japan with my father tomorrow. My father always travels to Japan for work. He buys ③ I'm happy to see the ④ and have my passport.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Pingo. I am a two-year old penguin. I live in the South Pole. A funny thing about me is that I am a bird with wings, but I can't fly! I use my wings to swim. They help me swim underwater really fast. Another funny thing about me is that some people say that I look like I'm wearing a fancy jacket. The black and white

colors help me hide from dangerous animals. I really love cold weather. My thick feathers make me pretty warm.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Penguins use their wings to

- ☐ a eat ☐ b fly ☐ c sleep ☐ d swim

2. The black and white colors help penguins hide from dangerous...

- ☐ a jackets ☐ b photos ☐ c animals ☐ d people

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Pingo?

4. Where does Pingo, the penguin live?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. can - Kangaroos - very - high - jump.

2. the weekend - you - free - Are - on?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (محابب به آخر الكتاب)

1. We drove to the café and (drink) some juice.

2. I don't (felt) well, doctor.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

reem is a good librarian

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My house

Guiding phrases

two armchairs - big kitchen

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Tests

4

إدارة شؤون الطلبة

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الصفحة



1. Rahma is in primary

- ☐ a three ☐ b four ☐ c six ☐ d five

2. Rahma has a big in her new apartment.

- ☐ a bathroom ☐ b bedroom ☐ c living room ☐ d kitchen

3. There are posters of in Rahma's bedroom.

- ☐ a animals ☐ b birds ☐ c flowers ☐ d shapes

4. There's a big to study on it.

- ☐ a bed ☐ b closet ☐ c cushion ☐ d desk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a new which is much easier to cook in.

- ☐ a television ☐ b oven ☐ c closet ☐ d shower

2. Most tourists like staying in a on their vacation.

- ☐ a hotel ☐ b museum ☐ c market ☐ d factory

3. left, the supermarket is on the corner.

- ☐ a Catch ☐ b Turn ☐ c Use ☐ d Work

4. can sleep upside down on trees.

- ☐ a Snails ☐ b Pandas ☐ c Bats ☐ d Penguins

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

staff - bandages - corridors - crowded - patients

I read about a hospital in India. This hospital is very ① because it treats ② from all over the country. But the ③ at this hospital teach the patients' families to look after their patients. The nurses become teachers and learn the family members how to change ④ and give injections.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

In Ancient Egypt many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks which made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped them to do this. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler.



A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made their homes _____ the Nile.
☐ a far ☐ b in ☐ c under ☐ d near
2. Ancient Egyptians made their homes from _____.
☐ a mud bricks ☐ b wood ☐ c straw ☐ d reed

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the general idea of the text?
-

4. How did mud bricks help Ancient Egyptians?
-

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. has - Fatma - toothache - a.
2. is - matter - What - the - , Ahmed?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس. (محابه احر الكتاب)

1. (are) you have a stomachache?
2. She didn't (sat) next to her best friend in class.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you have a cold

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your trip to a wildlife park

Guiding questions

- 1- What did you see in the wildlife park?
- 2 - How was your trip at the end?

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes
☐ a cool ☐ b hot ☐ c dirty ☐ d narrow
2. Ancient Egyptian all had flat roofs.
☐ a gardens ☐ b gates ☐ c homes ☐ d boxes
3. Families often cooked, ate and relaxed on the
☐ a papyrus ☐ b roof ☐ c floor ☐ d wall
4. There were mats to sit and sleep.
☐ a mud ☐ b reed ☐ c wooden ☐ d plastic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I saw many in the museum.
☐ a doctors ☐ b cars ☐ c toys ☐ d monuments
2. I have a sore throat. I should home.
☐ a hurt ☐ b stay ☐ c save ☐ d repeat
3. Spending time with your friends is good for your
☐ a health ☐ b food ☐ c sleep ☐ d cut
4. I'm about my unwell friends.
☐ a unsafe ☐ b worried ☐ c polite ☐ d unfit

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

librarian - talk - rules - cell - return

When we go to our school library, we should follow the library ① We shouldn't eat in the library. We can't use our ② phone. We should ask the ③ if we need help. We should ④ the book to its place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Salwa is a student who lives in Diyarb Negm. She likes music and computer very much. She sends emails to her friends abroad. She wants to travel to London when she is older. Last month, she wanted to buy a new computer. She went to a computer shop in Zagazig with her father. She bought a new one and was very happy because the new computer is a good one.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The opposite of the word "good" is
☐ a sad ☐ b beautiful ☐ c angry ☐ d bad
- Salwa went to the computer shop to buy the
☐ a laptop ☐ b tablet ☐ c computer ☐ d mouse

B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Salwa like?
- Who does Salwa send emails to?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- homes - unusual - think of - What - you - do ?
- the club - at - a good - We - day - had.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (محب عنه احر الكتاب)

- Don't (wasting) your time.
- The trip I went yesterday was very (bored).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

bats can fly at night

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

Guiding phrases

balanced diet - exercise daily

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Ahmed lives in Governorate.
☐ a Giza ☐ b Cairo ☐ c Alexandria ☐ d Aswan
- Alexandria is a big city in the of Egypt.
☐ a south ☐ b north ☐ c west ☐ d east
- Alexandria is famous for the beautiful
☐ a beaches ☐ b stores ☐ c buildings ☐ d towns
- Alexandria has a nice
☐ a time ☐ b park ☐ c weather ☐ d place



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We use to protect our skin from the sun.
☐ a honey ☐ b sunscreen ☐ c ice cream ☐ d jam
- A is a friendly sea animal. It loves to play with people.
☐ a dolphin ☐ b lion ☐ c panda ☐ d shark
- I live in the tenth floor, so I use the
☐ a shower ☐ b elevator ☐ c poster ☐ d bridge
- In the past people used as medicine.
☐ a honey ☐ b juice ☐ c money ☐ d water



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

restaurant - capital - kind - sight - metal

We flew to Paris last vacation. Paris is the city of France. I saw the Eiffel Tower. It's really tall and made of I can speak French well. I learnt French at school. The French people were very We went to a French and had a wonderful meal.



Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Parrots are very beautiful birds. Some are big and others are small. They usually live in the rainforest. Many people like them because they have beautiful colors and



General Tests

because some of them can talk. No one knows why parrots can talk. Parrots don't usually know what they are saying when they talk. They are only making sounds. Most parrots come from hot countries but they can live anywhere. Have you ever thought to buy one? It's very expensive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. parrots can talk.

- ☐ a Some ☐ b All of ☐ c A lot of ☐ d No

2. Parrots are to buy

- ☐ a cheap ☐ b expensive ☐ c ugly ☐ d bad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where do the parrots live?

4. Why do many people like parrots? . . .

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات من اليسار الى اليمين لتكوين جملة:

1. doesn't - My - a - mother - toothache - have.

2. did - go - Where - you - yesterday?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

قرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مطاب عنه آخر الكتاب)

1. We are going cycling (in) the weekend.

2. Now I (could) play the piano.

7 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i love my school and my teachers . . .

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إرشادية من (30) كلمة عن:

A nice trip

Guiding questions

1- Where did you go?

2- What did you do there?



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Kareem is going on a school trip in the
☐ a fields ☐ b desert ☐ c countryside ☐ d nature trail
- The desert is very in the day.
☐ a cold ☐ b nice ☐ c hot ☐ d cool
- Kareem's friends will pack the
☐ a suitcase ☐ b first aid kit ☐ c school bag ☐ d wooden boxes
- They will take bandages for
☐ a cuts ☐ b coughs ☐ c sunburns ☐ d fevers



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Beds, closets and tables are
☐ a fruits ☐ b furniture ☐ c vegetables ☐ d subjects
- Don't noise in the library.
☐ a borrow ☐ b turn ☐ c make ☐ d jump
- We use water for washing, cooking and
☐ a drinking ☐ b reading ☐ c writing ☐ d talking
- A/An is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.
☐ a dinosaur ☐ b ibex ☐ c penguin ☐ d bat



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

lives - only - peaceful - stop - shops

I went to visit my grandparents in their village. The village is very quiet and There are a few and houses. There is one restaurant, but it's great. Everyone who here is really friendly.



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

It's Tuesday and Baher is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.



A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about.....
- ☐ a Baher's school ☐ b Baher's doctor
- ☐ c Baher's family ☐ d Baher's illness
2. Baher has a
- ☐ a cold ☐ b backache ☐ c headache ☐ d toothache

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't Baher talk?
4. What must Baher do to get better?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. have - Do - toothache - you - a?
2. a professional - is - My - climber - uncle.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس، (مجاب عنه احر الكتاب)

1. Does your science class start (on) 10 pm?
2. I (visit) my sick relative in hospital yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

what does your house look like

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The dugong

Guiding phrases

unusual animal - nickname is the sea cow

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the

- ☐ a desert ☐ b Nile ☐ c fields ☐ d parks

2. They used _____ from the river.

- ☐ a sand ☐ b fish ☐ c mud ☐ d grass

3. They used mud to make _____ for their homes.

- ☐ a boxes ☐ b bricks ☐ c pots ☐ d baskets

4. The mud bricks helped their homes to be _____.

- ☐ a white ☐ b hot ☐ c cool ☐ d wide



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I saw a lot of _____ at the museum.

- ☐ a paintings ☐ b fields ☐ c factories ☐ d clouds

2. We need a _____ to travel to different countries.

- ☐ a message ☐ b passport ☐ c diary ☐ d show

3. We can _____ books from the library

- ☐ a buy ☐ b sell ☐ c borrow ☐ d lose

4. You can keep your money safely in the _____.

- ☐ a museum ☐ b restaurant ☐ c bank ☐ d shopping mall



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار.

ungrateful - rested - fell - shade - point

One day, two travelers were exhausted. They ① _____ under the tree. Then they enjoyed the ② _____ and the cool breeze. They soon ③ _____ asleep. When they woke up, they were hungry. They were ④ _____ because they said that the tree was useless and had no food.



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer in August, I was sitting by the window in the evening, reading a story. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound coming from my garden. I was scared



because I couldn't see anything from the dark outside. I called my parents and went out to the garden with a torch. I found my neighbor's dog. It jumped into our garden. I took it to my neighbor, Mr. Essam. He is a vet and looks after animals. He thanked me and invited me to have dinner with him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The writer couldn't see anything because it was
☐ a cold ☐ b light ☐ c dark ☐ d raining
- The underlined word "it" refers to the
☐ a dog ☐ b garden ☐ c story ☐ d torch

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's Mr. Essam's job?
- What did the writer find in the garden?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- works - food - in - My uncle - a big - factory
- movies - going - How about - the - to - tonight?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (محاب عنه آخر الكتاب)

- We (could to) help our mother last week.
- Stay home and (sleeping) well.

7 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how long did you live in Giza

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A wonderful day

Guiding questions

- Where did you spend that day?
- What could you do there?

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Yesterday, I had a bad.....
☐ a earache ☐ b toothache ☐ c headache ☐ d stomachache
2. The dentist gave me
☐ a money ☐ b honey ☐ c medicine ☐ d bandages
3. I should brush my teeth before and after each.....
☐ a day ☐ b meal ☐ c month ☐ d sleep
4. I should visit the.....every month.
☐ a nurse ☐ b doctor ☐ c vet ☐ d dentist

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1.have shells and they don't have legs or arms.
☐ a Dolphins ☐ b Pandas ☐ c Lions ☐ d Snails
2. That phone is very, but I want to buy a cheaper one.
☐ a active ☐ b expensive ☐ c careful ☐ d boring
3. My parents didn't buy that couch because it was
☐ a uncomfortable ☐ b friendly ☐ c unhappy ☐ d irregular
4. The Ancient Egyptians used.....to make bricks.
☐ a mud ☐ b wool ☐ c cotton ☐ d papyrus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

left - on - directions - straight - to

My friend Samy wanted to go to the museum. He had a map in his bag. He looked at the ❶ on the map. He went ❷ and turned ❸ at the end of the road. The museum was ❹ his left.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Hana. I was born in Cairo and I lived there for 12 years. Then, my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a new apartment in Port Said. I liked living in Port Said. It's a small, clean and quiet city. We can go to the beach at

any time. There are many parks. My new apartment is big. It has three bedrooms, one kitchen, two bathrooms and a big living room. There's a fantastic balcony.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hana is from now.

- ☐ a Port Said ☐ b Alexandria ☐ c Cairo ☐ d Aswan

2. Hana's new apartment is

- ☐ a big ☐ b small ☐ c high ☐ d fat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can they go in Port Said?

4. How many bedrooms are there in Hana's new apartment?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. speaks - dad - well - My - English.

2. kangaroos - do - Where - live - the?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجب عنه احر الكتاب)

1. Mohammad Salah is a very (fame) footballer.

2. Laila (isn't) have a sore throat yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

it is a perfect day for walking.

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

lots of amazing restaurants

swim in the sea and play on the beach

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last I had a wonderful day out.

- ☐ a year ☐ b month ☐ c week ☐ d weekend

2. I had a wonderful day out with my

- ☐ a friends ☐ b cousins ☐ c family ☐ d grandparents

3. I could see through the trees.

- ☐ a giraffes ☐ b lions ☐ c pandas ☐ d kangaroos

4. The kangaroos were very

- ☐ a boring ☐ b scary ☐ c interesting ☐ d awful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can speak French

- ☐ a fit ☐ b bright ☐ c well ☐ d bad

2. Ahmed his ankle at a basketball practice.

- ☐ a swam ☐ b told ☐ c hurt ☐ d came

3. You need a to travel to different countries.

- ☐ a message ☐ b passport ☐ c diary ☐ d show

4. Do you a toothache?

- ☐ a put ☐ b find ☐ c have ☐ d meet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

pots - wooden - roofs - reed - cover

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes were very different from today. They were ① mats to sit on and sleep. They used papyrus to ② the windows and doors. In every home, there were large ③ and baskets for storing crops and ④ boxes for clothes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I went with my friend Hisnam to the theme park on vacation. We went on different rides. The weather was nice. We had lunch and ice cream. We took lots of photos with my phone. We had a wonderful time. Then, we went home by taxi at five o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They took lots of photos with the writer's
☐ a camera ☐ b tablet ☐ c phone ☐ d computer
- They went home by
☐ a car ☐ b taxi ☐ c metro ☐ d bus

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who did the writer go with at the theme park?
- What could they see at the theme park?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جملاً:

- Fares - How - feel - does - today?
- cities - of - the most - This is - one - exciting.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاوب عليه احر الكتاب)

- Mr John (travel) all over Egypt on his last vacation.
- Dalia eats unhealthy food and she's (fit), too.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how long did you live here

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣) كلمة عن:

A headache

Guiding phrases

go to doctor's - give pills

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Tests

إدارة برج العرب التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father moved to a new
☐ a building ☐ b apartment ☐ c house ☐ d tent
2. The new kitchen is than the old kitchen.
☐ a smaller ☐ b longer ☐ c bigger ☐ d quieter
3. There's a/an in the kitchen.
☐ a table ☐ b chair ☐ c oven ☐ d mat
4. There are two armchairs in the
☐ a bedroom ☐ b living room ☐ c kitchen ☐ d bathroom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm going to get at the bank.
☐ a clothes ☐ b food ☐ c money ☐ d books
2. A swims in a group with his family in the ocean.
☐ a parrot ☐ b dolphin ☐ c kangaroo ☐ d bat
3. A: do you get to school? B: Go straight on.
☐ a How ☐ b When ☐ c What ☐ d Who
4. We can see a great view from our
☐ a oven ☐ b closet ☐ c balcony ☐ d cushion

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

set - sand - walk - arrived - fire

We went to a school trip in the desert. We ① on the weekend and ② up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on ③! At night, we sat around a ④ We sang songs and ate delicious food which we cooked on the fire.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar and his family went to the zoo last summer. They arrived at nine in the morning. They saw many different animals there. Omar's favorite animal is the

giraffe. It is a very tall animal. Omar's father gave the monkey two bananas. They also saw the lions, the tigers and the kangaroos. It was a wonderful trip. They went back home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about a
☐ a party ☐ b social media ☐ c beach ☐ d trip to the zoo
- The underlined word "wonderful" means
☐ a nice ☐ b bad ☐ c sad ☐ d cold

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is Omar's favorite animal?
- When did they go back home?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- penguins - the - live - Where - do?
- Japan - We - will - to - fly - tomorrow,

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه احر الكتاب)

- Let's (going) to Al-Azhar Park.
- Hisham couldn't (played) a guitar at seven.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

did you go to the market

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

exciting place - beautiful beaches

Alexandria

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الستمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاجتماع آخر القصاص



- Sally is going to the _____ tomorrow.
☐ a bank ☐ b station ☐ c library ☐ d restaurant
- Rana's favorite animal is the _____.
☐ a kangaroo ☐ b panda ☐ c giraffe ☐ d lion
- Sally and her _____ will pick up Rana at 4.
☐ a sister ☐ b father ☐ c brother ☐ d mother
- They will go home by _____.
☐ a bus ☐ b car ☐ c taxi ☐ d metro

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Don't _____ up flowers from the park.
☐ a pick ☐ b keep ☐ c spend ☐ d put
- It's important to eat _____ food.
☐ a unkind ☐ b healthy ☐ c sick ☐ d bad
- Cairo is the capital _____ of Egypt.
☐ a village ☐ b country ☐ c valley ☐ d city
- We use _____ to look at things in the distance.
☐ a tracks ☐ b bones ☐ c binoculars ☐ d skeletons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

take - sent - last - world - fly

Today I received an email from my friend, Amir. He's traveling around the ① _____ with his family. They were in India ② _____ week. He ③ _____ me nice photos with his family. He will ④ _____ to Italy tomorrow.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I like eating honey for breakfast. I have many jars of honey in my kitchen. It's very useful. We can put honey in some food like sweet basbousa. It is also used



as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with lemon to get better. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a cold, too.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- When you have a cold, you can mix honey with.
☐ a tea ☐ b lemon ☐ c juice ☐ d water
- The underlined word "It" refers to
☐ a honey ☐ b food ☐ c lemon ☐ d milk

B- Answer the following questions:

- When do you eat honey?
- Why is honey useful?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- leaves - lovely - This - has - tree.
- did - last - week - What - buy - you?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (محاب عنه آخر الكتاب)

- We're flying to Morocco (in) January 25th.
- Who (does) Seleem meet yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

It s nice to visit aswan.

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Eiffel Tower

File Fact:

Place:	Paris, France
Made of:	Metal

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Noha is interested in

- ☐ a history ☐ b social media ☐ c nature ☐ d colors

2. The kangaroo lives in

- ☐ a France ☐ b India ☐ c Australia ☐ d London

3. The penguins live in places.

- ☐ a cold ☐ b hot ☐ c warm ☐ d nice

4. Penguins are black and

- ☐ a blue ☐ b white ☐ c green ☐ d yellow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Our town has a shopping

- ☐ a male ☐ b mall ☐ c mole ☐ d mail

2. We're eating at the behind the park.

- ☐ a bank ☐ b museum ☐ c restaurant ☐ d library

3. Bats can upside down on trees.

- ☐ a sleep ☐ b sing ☐ c swim ☐ d speak

4. are funny and friendly sea animals.

- ☐ a Whales ☐ b Lions ☐ c Parrots ☐ d Dolphins

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

branches - useless - lived - trunk - shelter

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot dry land. It had for many years. Its was very wide. It had many It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived and it gave and rest to hundreds of traders as they moved across the country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It's Wednesday and Mona is at home. She can't go to school because she has a sore throat. She can't talk. Her mother took her to the doctor. The doctor says she



must not go outside. She must sleep and drink hot drinks. All his family and friends are worried about her. They hope she will get better soon.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Today is

- ☐ a Monday ☐ b Friday ☐ c Tuesday ☐ d Wednesday

2. Mona has a

- ☐ a sore throat ☐ b backache ☐ c headache ☐ d toothache

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Who are worried about Mona?

4. Where did her mother take her?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. enough - important - get - sleep - It's - to.

2. did - eat - the park - What - you - in?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (محاب عنه الكتاب)

1. What lesson did Gabi (learnt) at the end of the story?

2. My favorite (teaching) is Miss Mona, she's very kind and helpful.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i play in a basketball team

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding questions

What things did you do in Al-Azhar Park?

Who did you go with?

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائره حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Aya loves her
☐ a balcony ☐ b living room ☐ c closet ☐ d bedroom
- Aya shares the bedroom with her
☐ a parents ☐ b cousin ☐ c sister ☐ d friend
- Mona's bed is on the
☐ a left ☐ b right ☐ c corner ☐ d side
- There's a big in the living room.
☐ a television ☐ b armchair ☐ c lamp ☐ d shower

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- My mom usually uses the to bake cakes.
☐ a oven ☐ b armchair ☐ c bedroom ☐ d television
- Hisham was very because he missed the bus.
☐ a unfair ☐ b unlucky ☐ c unkind ☐ d unfriendly
- I can't hear well. I have a/an
☐ a backbone ☐ b sore throat ☐ c cough ☐ d earache
- We took a boat trip on the River Nile.
☐ a relaxing ☐ b delicious ☐ c polite ☐ d bored

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

hours - nickname - writing - cute - photo

I'm making a project at school about my favorite unusual animal. I'm ① about the dugong. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very ② Its ③ is the sea cow and it spends many ④ eating grass from the sea bed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw a tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, 'Let's stop under

that tree, where there's some shade". "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. Then, they enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "exhausted" means very.....
☐ a relaxed ☐ b happy ☐ c cool ☐ d tired
- Under the tree, there was some.....
☐ a shade ☐ b water ☐ c fruit ☐ d honey

B- Answer the following questions:

- Where did the travelers rest?
- What did they enjoy?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- Look ! - going - a photo - I'm - take - to.
- you - Do - play - again - want to - basketball?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه احر الكتاب)

- Uncle Youssef is very (interesting) in the rocks.
- Please (picking) up that trash.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do we study English on Monday

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your School trip

Guiding questions

- Where did you go?
- How did you spend your time there?

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Dalia likes about different things.

- ☐ a writing ☐ b blogging ☐ c reading ☐ d talking

2. Dalia is writing about unusual

- ☐ a animals ☐ b insects ☐ c homes ☐ d sports

3. Dalia found the upside down house in

- ☐ a the Netherlands ☐ b France ☐ c Marrakech ☐ d Amman

4. People are changing the house to make it.

- ☐ a bigger ☐ b modern ☐ c cleaner ☐ d higher

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's a in my club to swim in.

- ☐ a spoon ☐ b roof ☐ c pool ☐ d mall

2. I didn't arrive at school on

- ☐ a hour ☐ b time ☐ c clock ☐ d watch

3. My mother bought a long to wear.

- ☐ a fan ☐ b van ☐ c scarf ☐ d ferry

4. I couldn't see the birds in the sky well, so I used my

- ☐ a glasses ☐ b binoculars ☐ c tickets ☐ d suitcases

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

Learn - dig - job - bones - archaeologist

My name's Romy. I'm in primary five. I want to be an ① like my uncle Youssef. It's a cool ② and important, too. It helps us ③ about the past. We look for things and ④ underground to find objects for many years ago and study them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Adham. My uncle Ziad is sick in a hospital in Giza. Our relatives visit him. There are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are very friendly. The doctors help patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit my uncle every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. It is so clean. I hope my uncle will get well soon.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "patients" means... people.
☐ a sad ☐ b sick ☐ c happy ☐ d tall
- The hospital is in...
☐ a Giza ☐ b Aswan ☐ c Cairo ☐ d Alexandria

B- Answer the following questions:

- When is the hospital very crowded?
- What do the doctors give patients?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- does - Where - hurt - Doha - leg - her?
- the - place - is - favorite - My - beach.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس: (مجاب عنه ادر الكتاب)

- What did you (doing) last weekend?
- My trip to Al-Azhar Park was (amazed).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Where did you stay in aswan

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The bats

Guiding questions

- When do bats fly?
- How do bats sleep?

.....

.....

.....

.....

16

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع و اختر:



1. Huda's new apartment is _____ than her old one. (smaller - bigger - thinner)
2. There's a big _____ in Huda's bedroom. (oven - closet - TV)
3. Huda lived in her old apartment about _____ years. (11 - 12 - 13)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل:

get - medicine - matter - cold

- Doctor : What is the _____, Adel?
- Adel : I don't feel well. I have a _____.
- Doctor : OK. Stay home, sleep well and take this _____.
- Adel : Thank you, doctor. I hope I will _____ better.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

I'm Abeer. I'm in primary five. My brother is in primary four. My father is a doctor and my mother is a teacher. I like to read about animals. The kangaroo jumps on two legs. I like the parrot. It's very beautiful and colorful. The lion is a very big cat. It's very strong. Last week, we went to the wildlife park. Our father took us by his car. We saw a lot of different animals. We were very happy.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Abeer like to read?
2. How does Abeer go to the wildlife?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. They went to the wildlife park.....days ago. (five - seven - nine)
 4. The jumps on two legs. (lion - parrot - kangaroo)
 5. Abeer is.....than her brother. (older - younger - youngest)

D - Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need.....for drinking, cooking and washing.
☐ a oil ☐ b water ☐ c wool
 2. I.....in the park yesterday.
☐ a am ☐ b was ☐ c were
 3. The.....has no legs or arms.
☐ a parrot ☐ b snail ☐ c lion
 4. I.....speak English when I was five.
☐ a can't ☐ b couldn't ☐ c can
 5. I spent my.....in Alexandria last month. It was a good holiday.
☐ a vacation ☐ b job ☐ c apartment

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. fast - car - She - the - drove.
 2. go - to - Can - we - the - library?
 3. honey - When - you - do - eat?
 4. a skeleton - This - of - is - a dinosaur.
 5. from - water - Where - come - does?

General Tests

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واكمل الإجابة الصحيحة.

pouch - beautiful - animals - parrots

My cousin Nebil went to a wildlife park with his family. He saw lots of different His favorite birds are the They were so He saw the little kangaroos inside their mom's

2 Read and match A with B:

اقرأ وصل:

1 Dinosaurs were

2 Many tourists come

3 I go swimming

4 Be careful, the snake

a on Thursday.

b is poisonous.

c to visit Egypt.

d very big animals.

e a new job.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In summer holidays, my friends like to visit a lot of places. They went to Cairo last summer. They traveled by train. They visited the Egyptian Museum and saw lots of paintings. Then, they went to Al-Azhar Park and had a big picnic under the trees. They enjoyed all beautiful plants and birds in the park.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last summer, my friends went to

a Cairo

b Luxor

c Tanla

d Aswan

2. They traveled by

a taxi

b bus

c train

d car

3. They saw in the Egyptian Museum.

a paintings

b plants

c birds

d trains

4. They had a big in Al-Azhar Park.

a cake

b picnic

c pizza

d party



(B) Writing

Choose the correct from the following sentences from a, b or c:
اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. can - stay - How - you - healthy?

☐ a How stay can healthy you?

☐ b How healthy you stay can?

☐ c How can you stay healthy?

2. live - ice - snow - Penguins - and - on.

☐ a Penguins ice and snow on live.

☐ b Penguins live on ice and snow.

☐ c Penguins live and ice on snow.

Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:
رتب العبارات الآتية لتكوين فقرة:

<input type="checkbox"/> a I went to Alexandria.	1- ()
<input type="checkbox"/> b After that, I swam in the sea.	2- ()
<input type="checkbox"/> c Yesterday, I had a vacation.	3- ()
<input type="checkbox"/> d Then, I visited the beach.	4- ()

إجابات السؤال السادس في اختبار اللغة الإنجليزية



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

قرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

١ - محافظة القاهرة

1. Can I **have** some medicine, please?
2. We **couldn't** drive a car, but now we can.

٢ - محافظة الحيزة

1. Hoda **had** a sore throat last week.
2. My uncle is a very good **reader**.

٣ - محافظة القليوبية

1. We drove to the café and **drank** some juice.
2. I don't **feel** well, doctor.

٤ - محافظة المنوفية

1. **Do** you have a stomachache?
2. She didn't **sit** next to her best friend in class.

٥ - محافظة الشرقية

1. Don't **waste** your time.
2. The trip I went to yesterday was very **bor ng**.

٦ - محافظة الدقهلية

1. We are going cycling **on** the weekend.
2. Now I **can** play the piano.

٧ - محافظة الغربية

1. Does your science class start at 10 pm?
2. I visited my **unwell** relative in hospital.

٨ - محافظة الإسماعيلية

1. We **could** help our mother last week.
2. Stay home and **sleep** well.

٩ - محافظة بورسعيد

1. Mohammad Salah is a very **famous** footballer.
2. Laila **didn't** have a sore throat yesterday.

١٠ - محافظة البحيرة

1. Mr John **traveled** all over Egypt on his last vacation.
2. Dalia eats unhealthy food and she's **unfit**, too.

١١ - محافظة الاسكندرية

1. Let's go to Al-Azhar Park.
2. Hisham couldn't **play** a guitar at seven.

١٢ - محافظة بنى سويف

1. We're flying to Morocco on January 25th.
2. Who did Seleem meet yesterday?

١٣ - محافظة المنيا

1. What lesson did Gabi **learn** at the end of the story?
2. My favorite teacher is Miss Mona, she's very kind and helpful.

١٤ - محافظة أسيوط

1. Uncle Youssef is very **interested** in the rocks.
2. Please **pick** up that trash

١٥ - محافظة سوهاج

1. What did you do last weekend?
2. My trip to Al-Azhar Park was **amazing**.



Unit 7

LESSON 3

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 7, Lesson 3, page 13.
Exercise 9. Listen and write the words you hear.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1- wood | 2- flood | 3- book |
| 4- cook | 5- tool | 6- blood |

Unit 9

LESSON 3

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 42,
Exercise 1. Listen and repeat the words.

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1- teacher | 2- reader | 3- climber |
| 4- footballer | 5- farmer | 6- traveler |

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 42, Exercise 2. Listen again and write the -er words. (repeat of TR 2.21)

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 45, Exercise 7. Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check.

- | | | |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| 1- west | 2- whale | 3- vase |
| 4- vet | 5- volcano | 6- winter |

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 45, Exercise 8. Listen and write the words.

- | | | |
|---------------|----------|------------|
| 1- wheel | 2- vest | 3- volcano |
| 4- west | 5- whale | 6- vet |
| 7- watermelon | 8- wet | 9- violin |

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 3, page 45, Exercise 9. Listen and write. Then listen again and check.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

Review 3

LESSON 2

Narrator: Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 52, Exercise 3. Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs.

Nurse: Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

Kareem: I have an earache.

Nurse: Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.

Nurse: Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

Kareem: Thank you, nurse.

Narrator: Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 53, Exercise 4. Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures.

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1- panda | 2- penguin | 3- dolphin |
| 4- rabbit | 5- snail | 6- whale |

Unit 10

LESSON 1

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 10, Lesson 1, page 59, Exercise 4. Listen. Match the places and people.

Narrator: 1 Sara

Sara: I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

Narrator: 2 Ahmed

Ahmed: My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

Narrator: 3 Dina

Dina: We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T shirts and dresses.

Narrator: 4 Youssef

Youssef: I want to borrow some books.



Listening

LESSON 2

Narrator: Student's Book, Unit 10, Lesson 2, Page 63, Exercise 8. Listen. Write the letters on the map.

Number A:

Ahmed: Excuse me, how can I get to the train station?

Police officer: You can walk in the Park Avenue. Go straight to the Main Street and cross the Station Road. It's on your left.

Number B:

Adel: Where's the supermarket, please?

Nabil: Go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's on your right.

Number C:

Samir: Is there a café here?

Ayman: Yes, go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's next to the supermarket.

Review 4

LESSON 1

Narrator: Student's Book, Review 4, Lesson 1, page 100, Exercise 1. Write the missing letters. Listen and check.

- 1- dinosaur
- 2- passport
- 3- skeleton
- 4- tracks
- 5- binoculars
- 6- suitcase
- 7- archaeologist
- 8- station

LESSON 2

Narrator: Student's Book, Review 4, Lesson 2, page 102, Exercise 1. Listen and complete with the correct sound.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1- bathroom | 2- enjoy |
| 3- write | 4- gray |
| 5- play | 6- mother |

Listening Material (Exercises & Tests)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الوحدات والاختبارات

Unit 7

LESSON 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Fatma. I live in a modern apartment. There are four rooms in the apartment. The living room is next to the bedroom. I have three armchairs in the living room. The kitchen is big. I bake bread in the oven.

LESSON 3

The Nile was very important in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used it to travel from one place to another. They used mud bricks from the Nile to build their houses. All the roofs in Ancient Egypt were flat. These were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians sat and slept on reed mats. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside.

LESSON 4

I'm Dalia. I went to my uncle's farm yesterday. He's a farmer. He lives in an old farmhouse. He keeps many animals. He has cows, chickens, goats and sheep. I played with the goats. They were very funny. My uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. The fields are brilliant. I enjoyed my day.

Al-Azhar Exercises

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

My uncle is a vet. He loves animals. He has two children. His wife is a teacher. They are happy.

Activity Unit 7

My name is Ahmed. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother Hany. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. My bedroom is white and green. There is my bed with a desk next to it. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Unit 8

LESSON 1

My friend Amr didn't go the club yesterday. He had a cold. He has a sore throat. He didn't come to the football practice. He went to the doctor. The doctor told him to have hot drinks. Amr should stay home.

LESSON 3

My friend Hazem was ill yesterday. He went to the doctor's. Hazem had a stomachache. His stomach hurts. The doctor said to him to stay home. Hazem took the medicine and felt well.

LESSON 4

My Name is Doda. I like honey very much. When I have a sore throat, I have honey with lemon. Honey is very useful. It's used as a treatment. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. It's so good for healing wounds and treating illness.

Al-Azhar Exercises

I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.

Activity Unit 8

I like healthy food. It is really important to eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables. We should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep our body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Another thing, you should sleep between eight and nine hours every night.

Unit 9

LESSON 1

My uncle has a parrot in his house. It's colorful. Its name is Pinga. My uncle puts food and water for Pingo every day. The parrot can talk and repeat what we say. It has a beautiful beak and feathers.

LESSON 2

When Hisham was five, he could swim and talk. His brother was two years younger than him. Nabil couldn't talk or walk, but he could listen to music. Now, Hisham is ten years old. He can use a computer. He can play chess, too. Nabil is eight years old. He can swim and sing.

LESSONS 4&5

I watched a programme about sea animals on TV last week. I saw the dugong. It's unusual animal. It's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Al-Azhar Exercises

I like birds. My favorite bird is the parrot. It is so beautiful and it can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.

Listening

Activity Unit 9

My favorite animal is the penguin. It lives in the ocean. It's a friendly animal. It swims in a group with his family. It looks cute and cold. It eats fish. I did a project about the penguin at school. My science teacher was very happy about my project.

Review 3

Activity on units 7, 8 & 9

I'm Fatma. I live in Giza. When my parents had to move to a new job, we moved to a closer apartment. It's a bigger apartment. It has four rooms. The kitchen is bigger. There's more space so we can have a bigger television in the living room. I like our new apartment.

Unit 10

LESSON 1

My name is Adel. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my family. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a very big city. We always stay in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

LESSON 2

We should encourage our children to visit the library and read books. The library is not the place for running or loud noises. The children should keep the library clean. They should ask the librarian if they need help.

LESSONS 3

Hi, I'm Salma! I live in a small town. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother, Mohamed. There is a park next to our house. After school, I like to play in the park with my friends. On the other side of the park is my school.

Al-Azhar Exercises

Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants and museums. There's even a beach.

Activity Unit 10

I'm Hany. I go to Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a big city. We always stay in a hotel near the train station. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

Unit 11

LESSON 1

I'm Osama. I went to Dubai last month. There are many high-rise buildings. I stayed in a lovely hotel room. There was a big swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. It was amazing. I went on a boat trip and went on rides at the theme park.

LESSON 2

Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year. They always want to check in to a comfortable hotel. They try traditional Egyptian food. They visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the old parts of Cairo. They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in winter.

LESSON 3

Hani can do a lot of activities on vacation. Hani goes to Alexandria in the summer. He always goes there with his family. They can see the beach as they stay in a hotel in front of the sea. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the beach.

Al-Azhar Exercises

Ali is farmer. He gets up early. Ali grows vegetables and keeps animals.

Activity Unit 11

Ramy and Adam are friends. They are in primary five. Ramy likes playing football. He wants to play football after school on Thursday. Adam likes swimming. He goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rowan. Ramy and Adam have a good time.

Review 4

Activity on units 10, 11 & 12

Yesterday, I decided to go to on vacation to Alexandria. I like to spend my summer holiday there to enjoy swimming on the beach. I packed my suitcase. I took my swimming suit, shorts, T-shirts and my sunglasses. I stayed in a big hotel near the beach. I saw a lot of tourists there. I had a wonderful holiday.

امتحان محافظة القاهرة 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle is a scientist. Yesterday he traveled to Africa for work. He likes doing experiments on animals in the desert. The people in Africa were friendly and helped him.

امتحان محافظة الجيزة 2

I like eating honey for breakfast. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. But don't put it on your cut knee.

امتحان محافظة القليوبية 3

I went to the countryside to visit my cousin Noha. I felt bored with Noha. I had a delicious lunch with Noha. Then, we watched TV in the evening.

4 امتحان محافظة المنوفية

Rahma is twelve years old. She is in primary five. She has a big bedroom in her new apartment. She loves her bedroom. She spends most of time in her bedroom. There are posters of flowers on the walls of her bedroom. There's a big desk to study on it, too.

5 امتحان محافظة الشرفية

People in Ancient Egypt used mud bricks to keep their homes cool. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

6 امتحان محافظة الدقهلية

My friend Ahmed lives in Alexandria Governorate. He likes living there. Alexandria is a big city in the north of Egypt. It's famous for the beautiful beaches. It has a nice weather.

7 امتحان محافظة الغربية

Kareem is going on a school trip to the desert in the summer. The weather is very hot in the day and very cold at night. Kareem and his friends will pack the first aid kit. They will take bandages for cuts and sunscreen for sunburns. They will put scissors and medical gloves, too.

8 امتحان محافظة الاسماعيلية

In the past, Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the Nile. They used mud from the river to make bricks for their homes. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped to do this.

9 امتحان محافظة بورسعيد

Yesterday, I had a bad toothache. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me medicine and told me to eat healthy food. But I like chocolate and sweet things. I should brush my teeth before and after each meal. I should visit the dentist every month.

10 امتحان محافظة البحيرة

Last month, I had a wonderful day out with my family. I went to the new wildlife park. It was awesome. I could see lions through the trees and the kangaroos very were interesting.

11 امتحان محافظة الاسكندرية

My father moved to a new apartment last week. He had a new job in Cairo. I love this new apartment. It's very big. The new kitchen is bigger than the old kitchen. There's an oven. There are two armchairs in the living room.

12 امتحان محافظة بني سويف

Sally is going to get money at the bank tomorrow. Her sister Rana likes the zoo. She will go to the zoo at ten o'clock. Her favorite animal is the panda. Sally and her father will go to the bank. Then, they will pick up Rana at four o'clock. After that, they will go home by taxi.

13 امتحان محافظة المنيا

My friend Noha is interested in social media. She likes learning a lot of information about animals. She learns that the kangaroo lives in Australia. Her favorite animal is the penguin. Penguins are black and white. They live in cold places.

14 امتحان محافظة اسبوط

Aya's father bought a new apartment. Aya loves her bedroom. It's very big. She shares her bedroom with her sister Mona. Aya's bed is on the left and Mona's bed is on the right. There's a big television in the living room.

15 امتحان محافظة سوهاج

Hi! My name's Dalia and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down. It's actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern.

16 امتحان الزمر الشريف

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Huda moved to a new apartment yesterday. Her new apartment is bigger than the old one. There's a big closet in Huda's bedroom. Huda lived in her old apartment about thirteen years.